

# Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi HS5!

Hongqi HS5 is equipped with various luxury equipment and advanced technologies. In order to make full use of these equipment and technologies in your car life in the future, it is recommended that you read this manual carefully so that you can quickly and comprehensively understand Hongqi HS5.

This manual provides detailed instructions on safe driving, car maintenance, and emergency countermeasures in addition to introducing how to use the car, aiming to enable you to use the car safely and comfortably, while maximizing the value of the car.

In addition to the Owner's Manual, the accompanying documents also include the Maintenance Manual, containing important information on the usage and maintenance of Hongqi HS5. It is recommended that you keep the accompanying documents in your vehicle for convenient access at any time.

This manual is based on the product's conditions at the time of publication, subsequent product changes will be revised at the time of reprinting and the revisions will be made without notice. Thanks for understanding.

For any other questions about the car or if you feel the information provided in the accompanying documents is insufficient, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer, and we will be happy to help you!

You can view or download the latest version of the Owner's Manual from the Hongqi official website. Before using the car, it is recommended that you read the manual carefully.

Official website: <https://www.hongqi-auto.com>

Have a nice drive!

China FAW Group Import and Export Co., Ltd





## Table of contents

|    |                                |                                                                      |
|----|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Index of figures               | Search by figures                                                    |
| 1  | Instructions before driving    | Always read safety instructions                                      |
| 2  | Preparation before driving     | Inspection and preparation before driving                            |
| 3  | Getting on/off the car         | Using doors and trunk                                                |
| 4  | Comfort adjustment             | Adjustment before driving and using interior equipment               |
| 5  | In-vehicle infotainment system | Operate in-vehicle infotainment system                               |
| 6  | Driving the vehicle            | Necessary operations and recommendations during driving              |
| 7  | Parking assist                 | Auxiliary functions when parking                                     |
| 8  | Parking the car                | Safe operations when parking                                         |
| 9  | Fault and emergency handling   | Countermeasures in case of a fault or an emergency                   |
| 10 | Maintenance and specifications | Detailed information on maintenance procedures and specifications    |
|    | Other information              | List of abbreviations and other information contained in this manual |

## 1 Instructions before driving

### 1-1. Instructions for safe use

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| Safe driving .....                           | 26 |
| Seat belt .....                              | 28 |
| Airbag .....                                 | 34 |
| Child safety information .....               | 46 |
| Child restraint system ....                  | 47 |
| Installation of child restraint system ..... | 53 |
| Precautions for exhaust gas .....            | 58 |

### 1-2. Warning lamps and indicator lamps

|                      |    |
|----------------------|----|
| Indicator lamp ..... | 59 |
| Warning lamp .....   | 61 |

### 1-3. IMMO system/anti-theft system

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Engine IMMO system ....     | 67 |
| Body anti-theft system .... | 68 |

## 2 Preparation before driving

### 2-1. Vehicle inspection

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Inspection before driving ..... | 70 |
|---------------------------------|----|

### 2-2. Driving in winter

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Driving essentials in winter ..... | 71 |
|------------------------------------|----|

### 2-3. Refueling

|                            |    |
|----------------------------|----|
| Opening fuel tank cap .... | 74 |
|----------------------------|----|

## 3 Getting on/off the car

### 3-1. Key information

|           |    |
|-----------|----|
| Key ..... | 80 |
|-----------|----|

### 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| Door .....      | 83 |
| Trunk lid ..... | 87 |
| PEPS .....      | 92 |

### 3-3. Loading

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| Goods and luggage ..... | 97 |
|-------------------------|----|

## 4 Comfort adjustment

### 4-1. Seats

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Front seat .....                             | 100 |
| Rear seat .....                              | 102 |
| Headrest .....                               | 105 |
| Seat memory* .....                           | 107 |
| Seat ventilation and heating function* ..... | 109 |

### 4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Steering wheel .....           | 111 |
| Interior rearview mirror ..... | 113 |
| Exterior rearview mirror ..... | 115 |

### 4-3. Windows and sunroof

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Power window .....      | 118 |
| Panorama sunroof* ..... | 121 |

### 4-4. A/C system

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Automatic A/C system ..... | 124 |
| Windshield heating .....   | 134 |

### 4-5. Interior power supply

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| On-board wireless charging* ..... | 135 |
| USB power outlet .....            | 137 |
| 12 V backup power .....           | 139 |

### 4-6. Interior lamp

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Using interior lamp ..... | 141 |
|---------------------------|-----|

### 4-7. Storage compartments

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Using storage compartments ..... | 144 |
|----------------------------------|-----|

### 4-8. Other equipment

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Using other equipment .. | 150 |
|--------------------------|-----|

## 5 In-vehicle infotainment system

### 5-1. Basic operation

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Multimedia display ..... | 156 |
| Data interface .....     | 160 |

### 5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Setting .....              | 162 |
| Entertainment .....        | 168 |
| Extended application ..... | 169 |

### 5-3. Using hands-free system

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Hands-free system ..... | 170 |
|-------------------------|-----|

## 6 Driving the vehicle

### 6-1. Instrument information

|                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Instrument cluster .....                                          | 174 |
| Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster ..... | 176 |
| Head up display* .....                                            | 179 |

### 6-2. Driving specifications

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Driving the vehicle .....   | 181 |
| Engine (start) switch ..... | 190 |
| Gearshift control .....     | 192 |
| Driving mode .....          | 199 |

### 6-3. Operating lamps and wipers

|                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Headlamp switch .....                      | 203 |
| Turn signal lamp control lever .....       | 206 |
| Intelligent high beam control (IHC)* ..... | 207 |
| Fog lamp switch .....                      | 209 |
| Front windshield wiper & washer .....      | 210 |
| Rear windshield wiper & washer .....       | 214 |

### 6-4. Using driver assistance system

|                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cruise control* .....                                       | 216 |
| Adaptive cruise control (ACC)* .....                        | 220 |
| Super adaptive cruise control (SACC)* .....                 | 230 |
| Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) .....                | 242 |
| Lane departure warning/lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA)* ..... | 244 |
| Forward collision warning (FCW)* .....                      | 248 |
| Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)* .....                   | 251 |
| Blind spot detection (BSD)* .....                           | 255 |
| Traffic sign recognition (TSR)* .....                       | 260 |
| Idle stop-start system* ..                                  | 262 |
| Driver assistance system .....                              | 267 |

## 7 Parking assist

### 7-1. Parking control

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Front and rear parking radar ..... | 272 |
| Reverse image system* .....        | 277 |
| AVM* .....                         | 281 |
| Auto parking assist (APA)* .....   | 287 |

## 8 Parking the car

### 8-1. Parking assist

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Electronic parking brake (EPB) ..... | 298 |
| AUTO HOLD .....                      | 300 |

### 8-2. Get-off

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Door opening warning* ..... | 302 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

## 9 Fault and emergency handling

### 9-1. Important information

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Hazard warning lamp .... | 306 |
| SOS alarm* .....         | 307 |

### 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| If the car needs to be towed .....          | 308 |
| If the car is found to be abnormal .....    | 313 |
| If you have a flat tire .....               | 314 |
| If the engine cannot start .....            | 322 |
| If the key is lost .....                    | 323 |
| If the key fails to work normally .....     | 324 |
| If the door cannot be locked normally ..... | 326 |
| If battery power is low ...                 | 328 |
| If your car overheats ....                  | 331 |
| If car trap occurs .....                    | 333 |
| If driving on water-logged road .....       | 335 |
| If you have a burst tire ..                 | 336 |
| If an accident occurs ....                  | 337 |
| Emergency opening of trunk lid .....        | 338 |

**10 Maintenance and specifications****10-1. Service and maintenance**

Cleaning and protecting  
exterior trims of car ... 342

Cleaning and protecting  
interior trims of car .... 345

**10-2. Maintenance**

Precautions for  
maintenance ..... 348

**10-3. Maintenance by yourself**

Precautions for  
maintenance by  
yourself ..... 351

Particulate filter ..... 354

Engine hood ..... 356

Engine compartment .... 357

Tire ..... 370

Tire pressure ..... 373

Wheel ..... 375

A/C filter ..... 377

Replacing key battery ... 379

Checking and replacing  
fuse ..... 381

**10-4. Specifications**

Maintenance data ..... 385

Fuel information ..... 396

**Other information**

List of abbreviations ..... 398

Event data recorder ..... 400

1

2

3

4

5

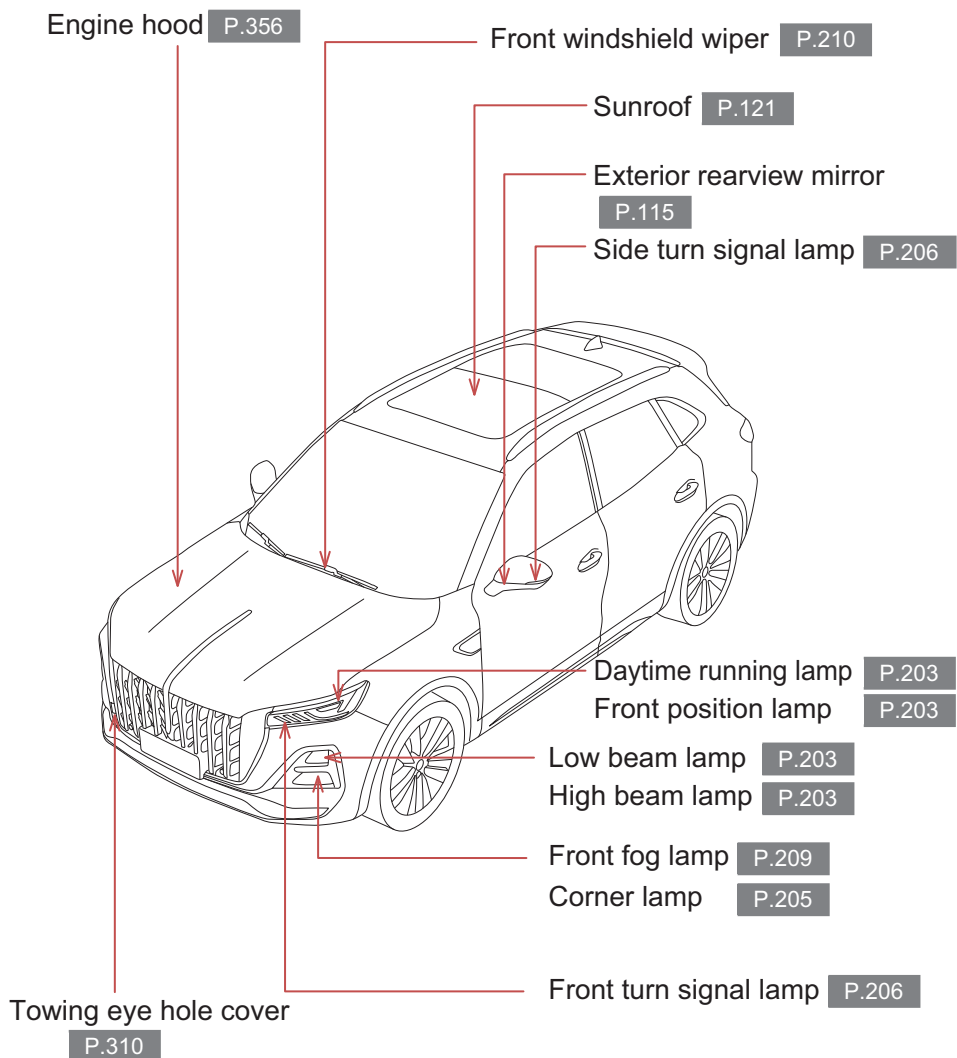
6

7

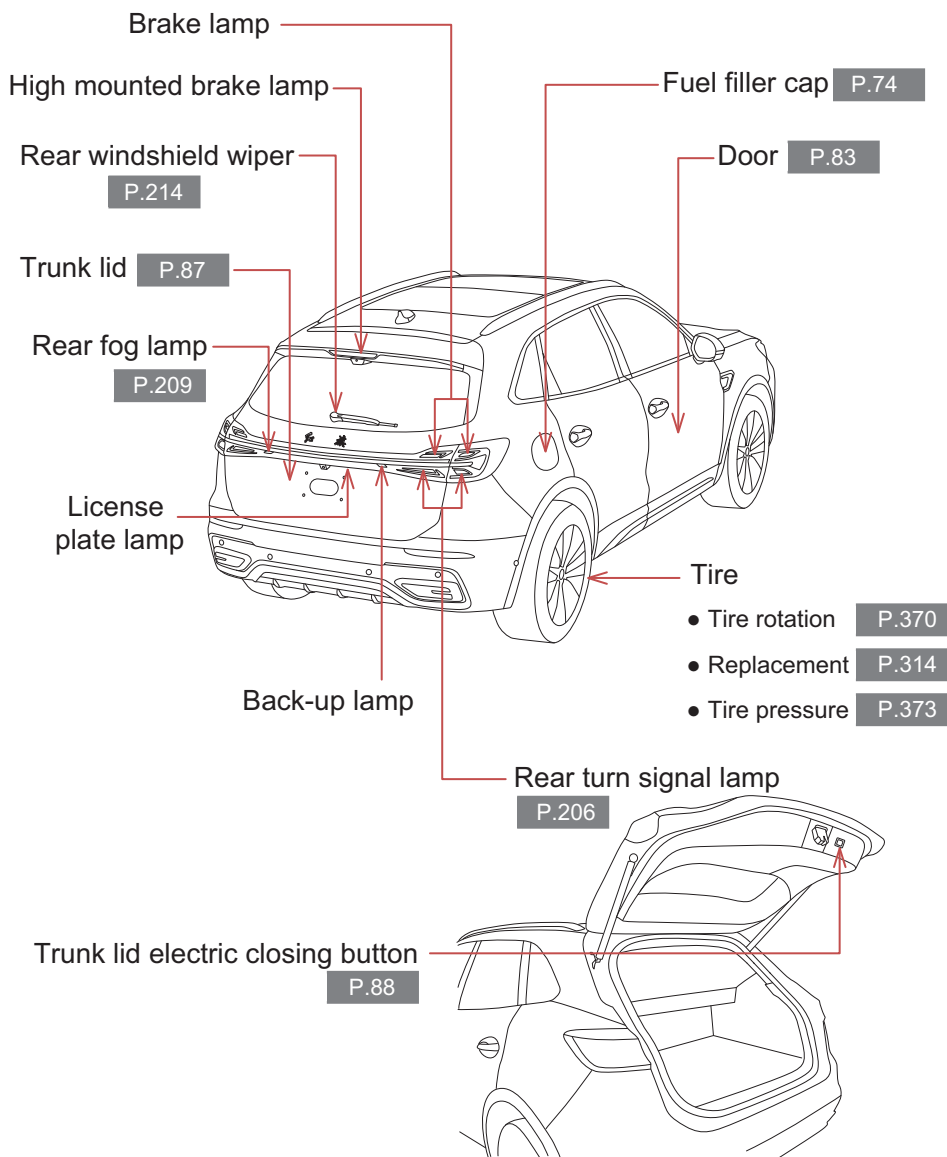
8

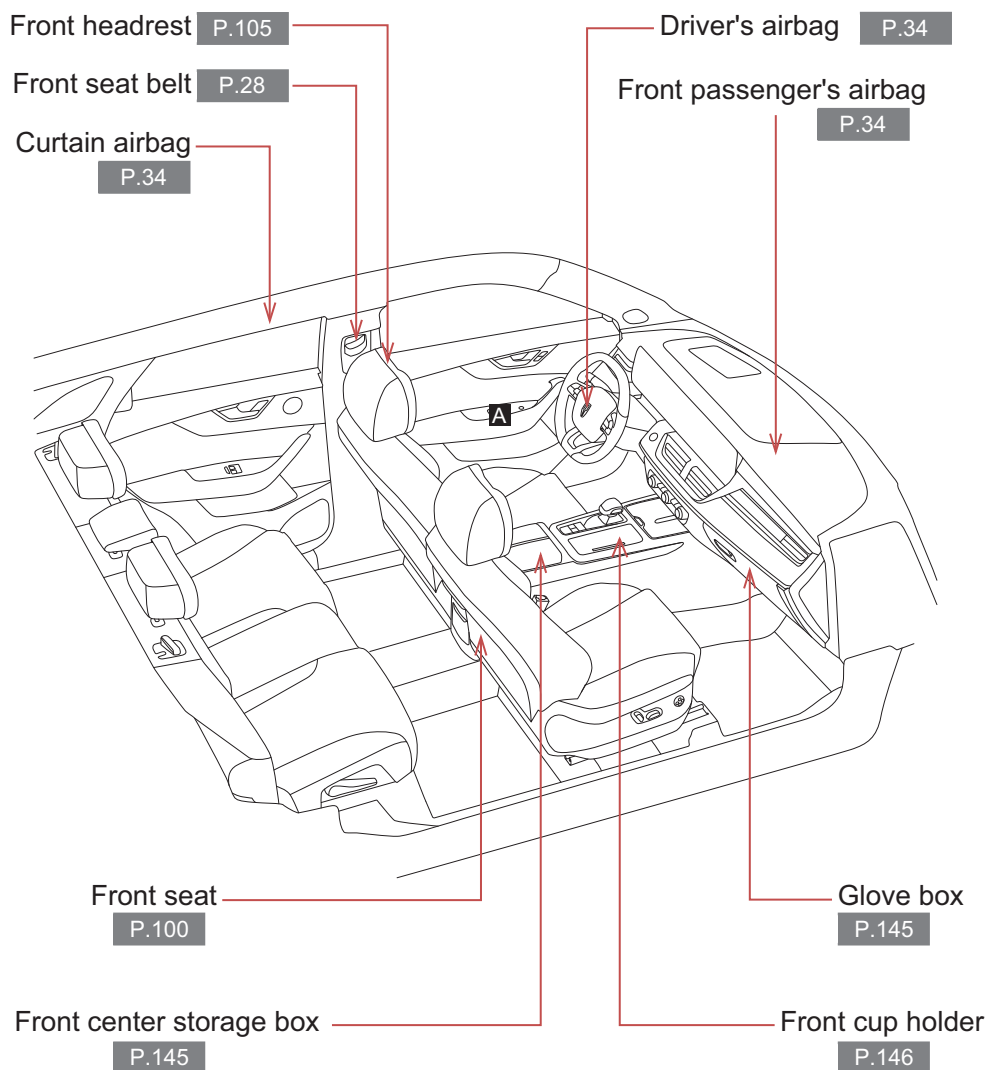
9

10

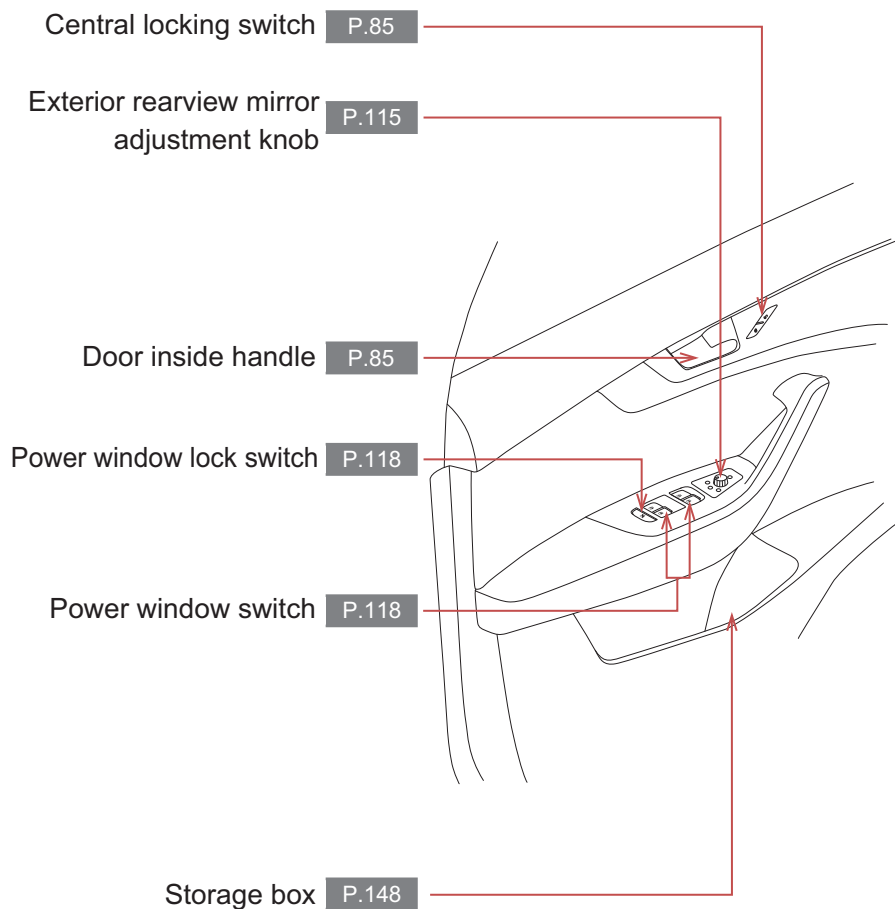


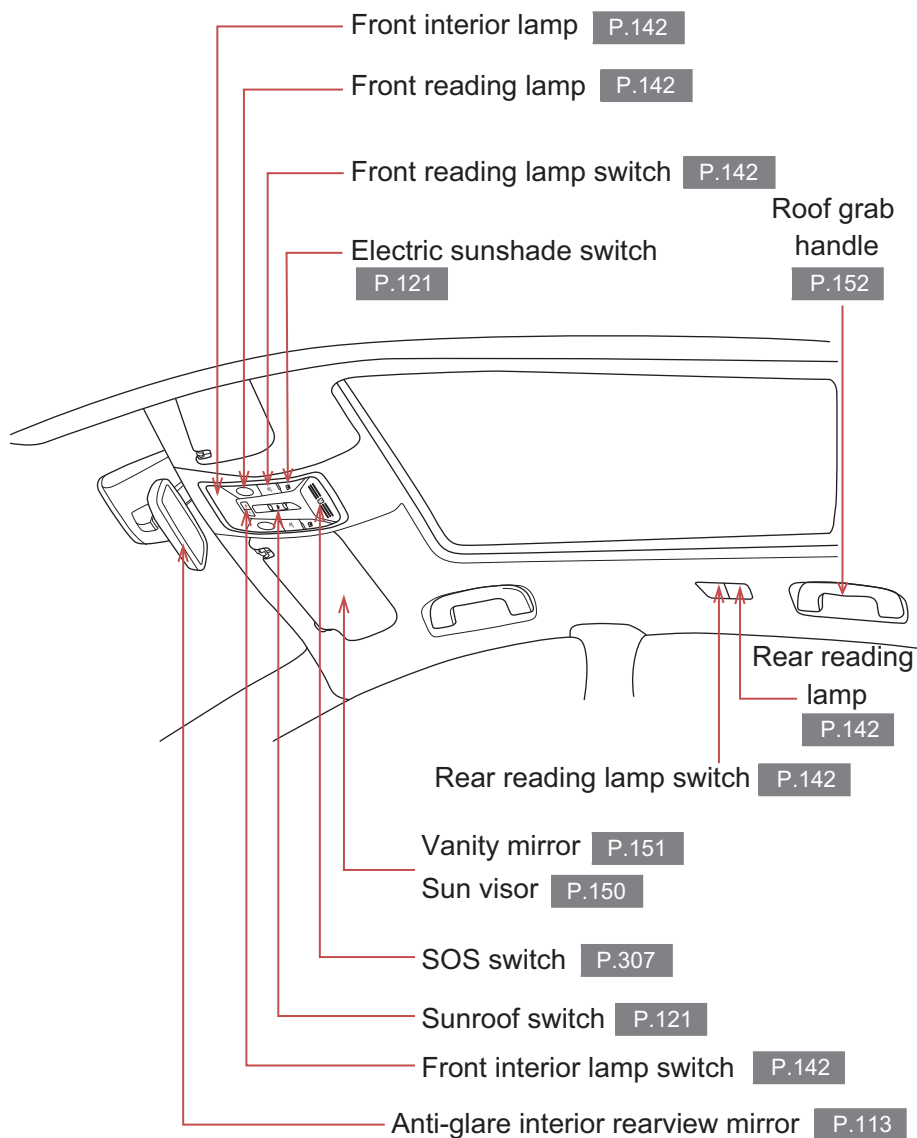


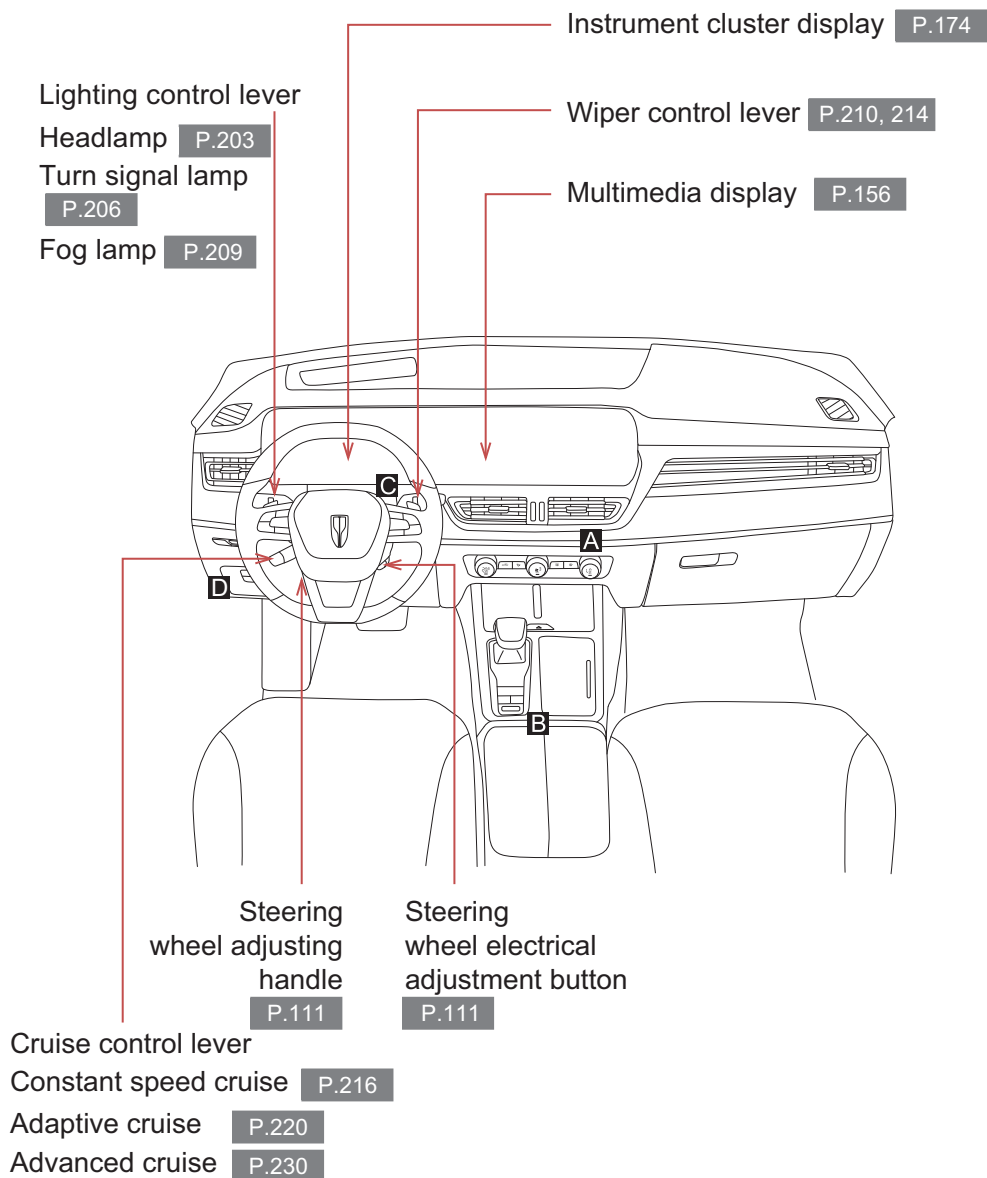


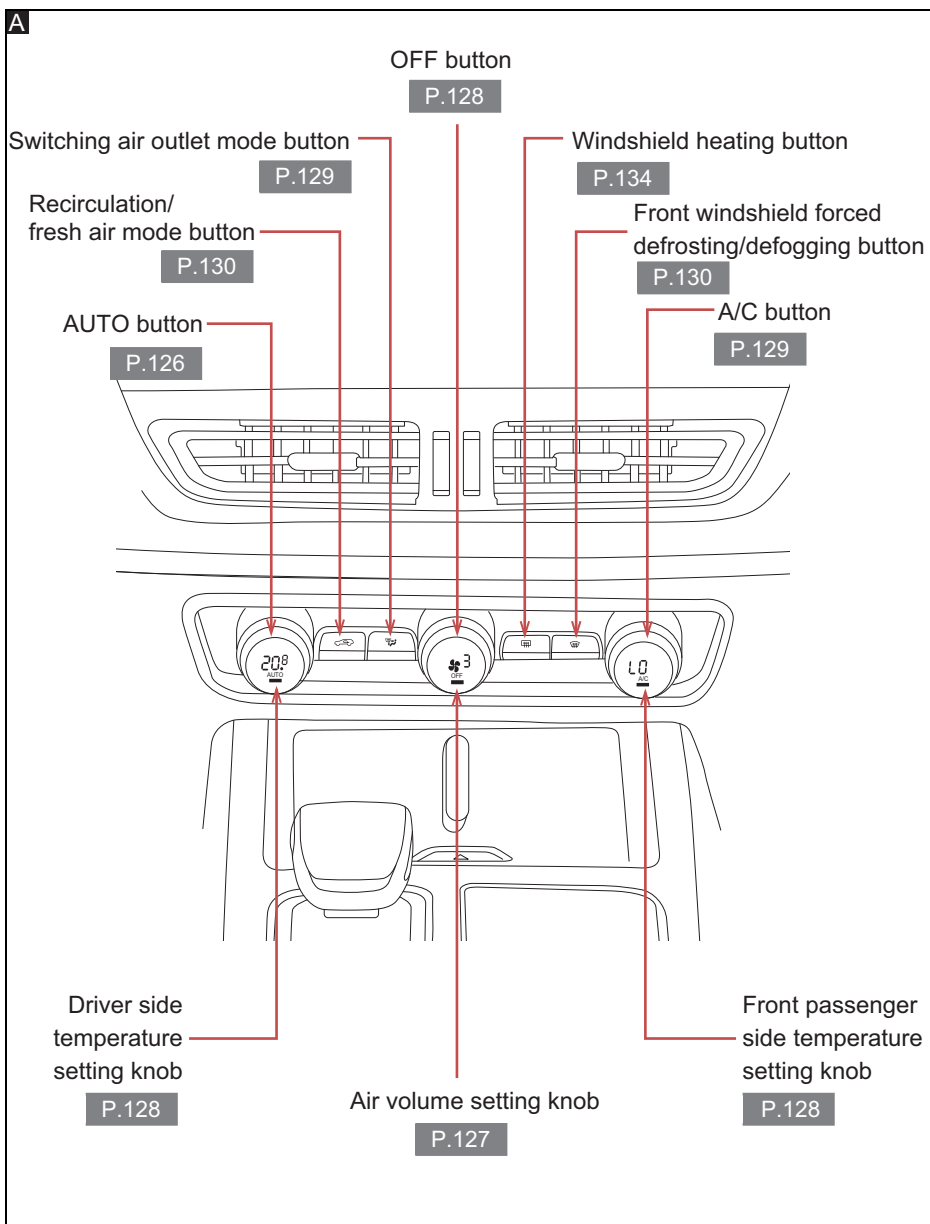


**A**

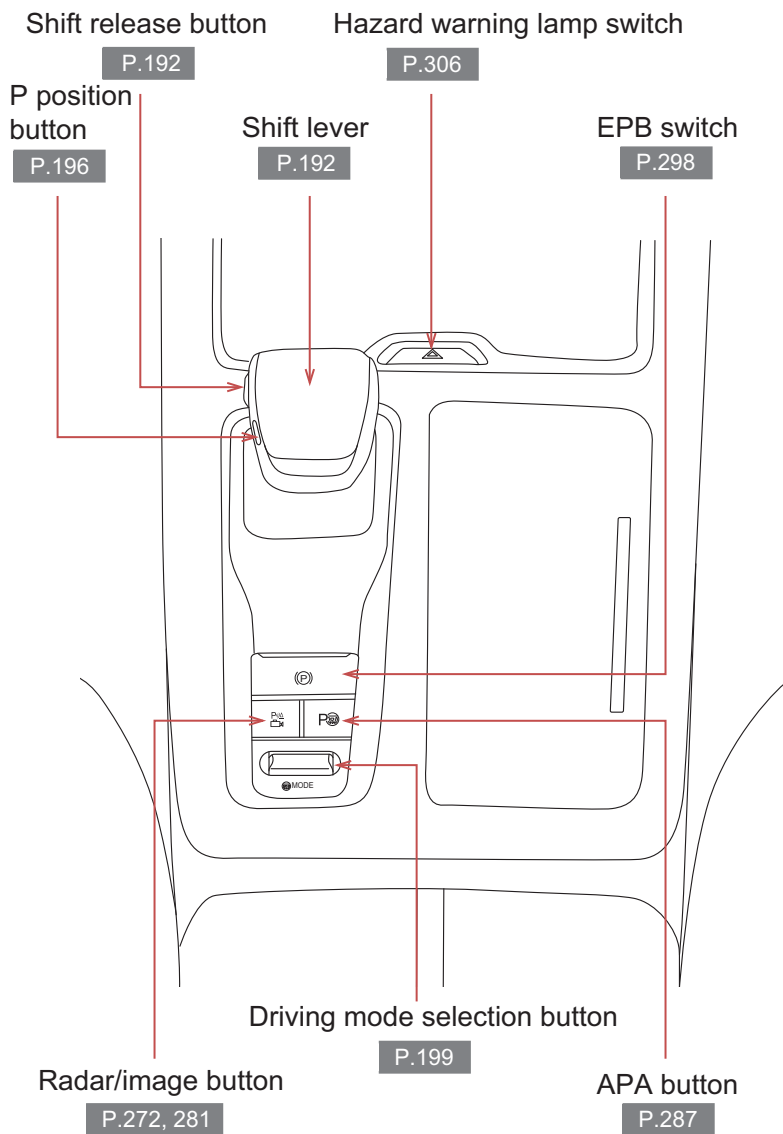








**B**



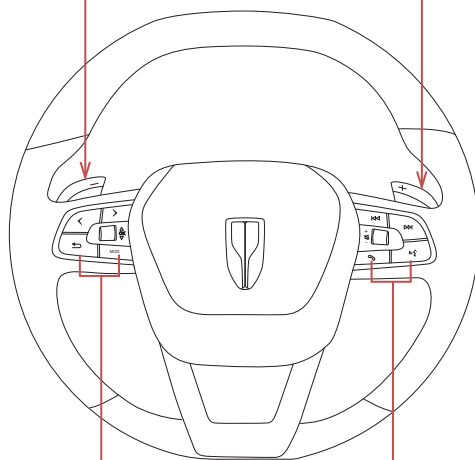
C

Downshift paddle

P.197

Upshift paddle

P.197



Buttons on the left  
of steering wheel

P.177

Buttons on the right  
of steering wheel

P.178



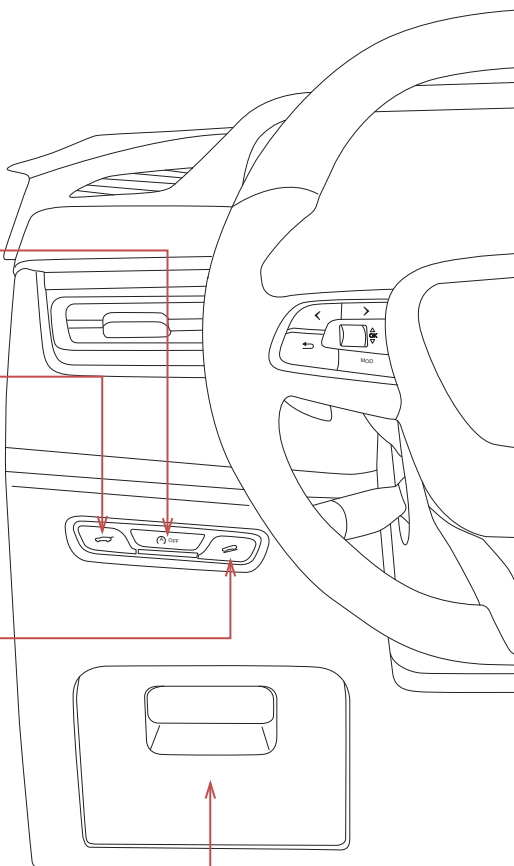
**D**

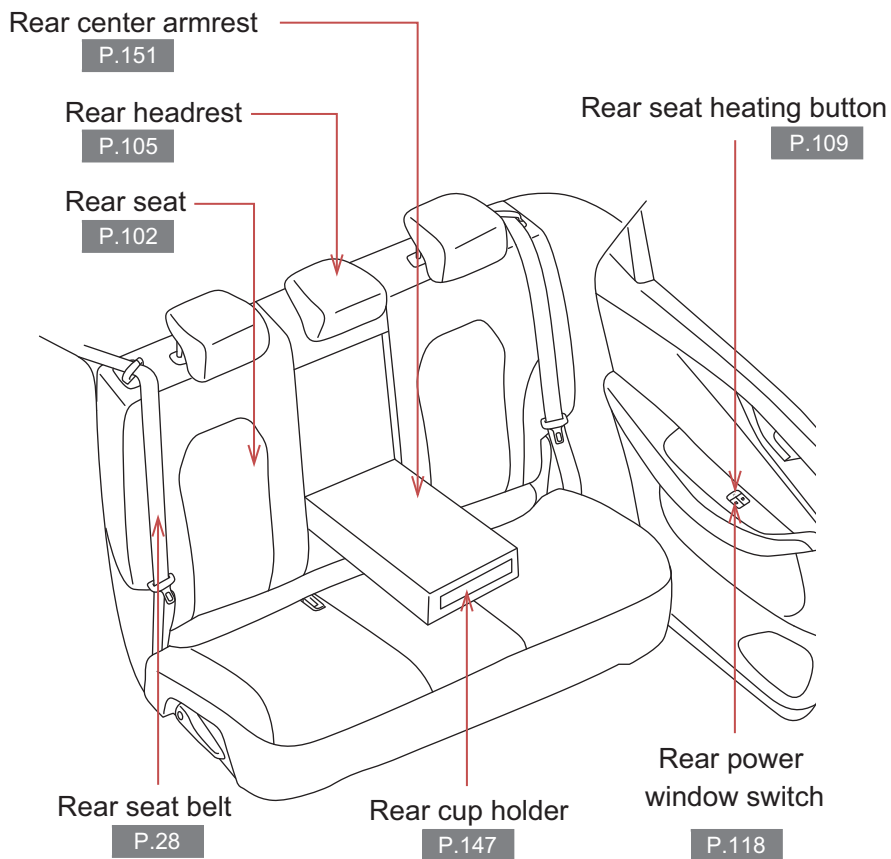
Idle stop-start OFF button  
P.262

Trunk lid interior  
unlocking button  
P.87

Hill descent control button  
P.267

Storage box on left lower guard  
P.146





## Reference information

### Instructions for use

The user must hold a driving license before driving the car on the road. This manual is intended for such users.

As a general manual, this manual is applicable to multiple models of HS5. Some equipment described in the manual may not be installed on your car. \* Indicates that the configurations and functions may vary by model. For specific configuration information, please refer to the relevant sales materials or consult the dealer you purchased the car.

The pictures in this manual are for reference only to help you understand the car more intuitively, which may be slightly different from your car. Please refer to the real car configurations.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date when it goes to press. However, due to ongoing modifications and improvements by FAW, the equipment and performance of the follow-up models may vary. Thus, the content of this manual is subject to change without notice. Please do not compare the owner's manual of other versions with the equipment and performance of your car, or require for retrofitting based on the difference between the two. If you have any questions about your car or this owner's manual, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### Accessories, spare parts and modifications of car

An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has the advanced tools, equipment and genuine spare parts for the maintenance and service of your car. We strongly recommend that you use FAW genuine spare parts and accessories that meet the requirements of this car.

For any non-genuine spare parts or accessories, whether they are used for replacement or installation, FAW neither assumes any responsibility nor provides any guarantee. In addition, car damage and performance problems due to the use of the above-mentioned spare parts or accessories are not covered under warranty.

It is prohibited to illegally modify the car with products not authorized by FAW, otherwise it may affect the handling, safety and durability of the car, and may even violate local government regulations. In addition, problems due to modifications are not covered under warranty.

### Reading vehicle identification number (VIN)

Use a diagnostic scan tool to connect the OBD port of the car; when reading the ECU information, you can read the VIN. Reading tool can be purchased in the market, and must meet ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031, and ISO11898 standards.

### Installing RF transmitter system

Installation of the RF transmitter system in the car may affect electronic systems such as:

- Antilock brake system (ABS)
- Cruise control system
- Airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Before installing the RF transmitter system, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### Scrapping of car

Since the airbags and seat belt pretensioners contain explosive chemicals, if the car is scrapped without removing them, accidents such as personal injury and fire may occur. Before scrapping the car, be sure to contact a qualified company or institution to remove and dispose of the airbags and seat belt pretensioners. An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is familiar with relevant laws and regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

## Environmental protection

Used parts and waste oil:

- Dispose of the used parts and waste oil properly.
- Improper disposal may lead to environmental pollution.
- Consult the dealer you purchased the vehicle before scrapping the vehicle.

Eco-friendly and economical driving:

- Avoid unnecessary idling and excessively stepping on the accelerator pedal, observe legal speed limits and keep safe driving in mind.

## Model code

This manual describes CA6483HA6TC and CA6483HA6TD models.



## **WARNING**

### **■ Precautions for driving**

It is important for the driver to drive soberly, carefully and attentively.

- **Drive soberly:** Never drive the car after drinking or taking medicine. Alcohol or certain medications may delay response time and impair judgment and coordination, thus resulting in serious injury or death.
- **Drive carefully:** Always drive with caution. Always pay attention to the movements of other vehicles and pedestrians in order to make timely judgments to prevent accidents.
- **Drive attentively:** Be sure to concentrate on driving. Anything distracting the driver's attention, such as adjusting the control buttons, making a phone call or reading, may lead to a collision and cause serious injury or even death.

### **■ Precautions regarding child safety**

- Never leave children unattended in the car.
- Do not allow children to carry or use the key, as children may cause a safety hazard by starting the car or operating the shift lever.
- Do not allow children to play with doors, windows or other car equipment as they may get injured.
- Make sure that the temperature inside the car is appropriate, because too high or too low temperature may cause fatal injury to children.

## Read this manual

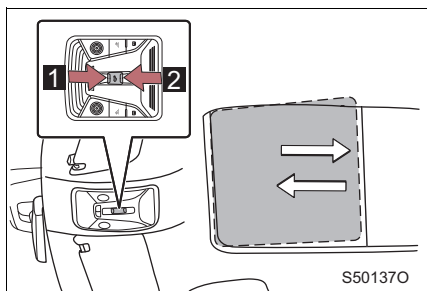
### **WARNING**

Explains warnings that, if not obeyed, could cause serious injury or even death.

### **CAUTION**

Explains precautions that, if not obeyed, could cause car damage or malfunction.

**Step 1** Indicates operating or working procedures, which should be performed in numerical order.



➡ Indicates the action (push, turn, press, etc.) used to operate the switch and other devices.

⇒ Indicates the result of the operation (for example, the cover is opened).



⊘ Indicates "Do not", "Do not do", or "Do not do this".





## **1-1. Instructions for safe use**

Safe driving .....26

Seat belt .....28

Airbag .....34

Child safety  
information .....46

Child restraint  
system .....47

Installation of child  
restraint system .....53

Precautions for  
exhaust gas .....58

## **1-2. Warning lamps and indicator lamps**

Indicator lamp .....59

Warning lamp .....61

## **1-3. IMMO system/anti-theft system**

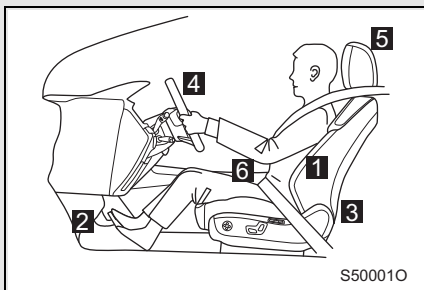
Engine IMMO  
system .....67

Body anti-theft  
system .....68

## Safe driving

**Before driving, adjust the seat, steering wheel and rearview mirrors to the proper positions to ensure safe driving.**

■ **Correct driving posture**



**1** Sit up straight with your back against the seat back.

**2** Adjust the seat position forward or backward to ensure that you can depress the pedal to the desired position easily.

**3** Adjust the seat back for convenient access to various switches.

**4** Adjust the tilt angle of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing the driver's chest.

**5** Adjust and lock the headrest so that its center is flush with the upper part of the ear.

**6** Fasten the seat belt properly.

■ **Correct use of seat belt**

Before driving, make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.

Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.

■ **Adjustment of rearview mirrors**

Adjust the interior and exterior rearview mirrors properly to ensure a clear rear view.

**WARNING****■ Precautions when driving**

- Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving as this may result in loss of vehicle control.
- Do not place a cushion between your body and the seat back, as this will hinder proper sitting posture and reduce the effectiveness of seat belt and headrest.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may cause the objects to be caught by the seat sliders.
- During long-distance driving, please take appropriate breaks if you feel tired.  
If you feel tired or drowsy during driving, do not force yourself to continue driving but immediately rest.

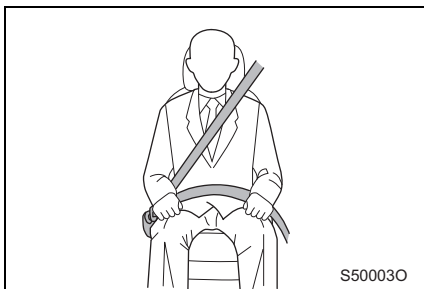
**■ Adjustment of seat position**

- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that the seat does not hurt any other occupants.
- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving parts while adjusting the seat, otherwise your fingers may be pinched by seat adjustment device.

# Seat belt

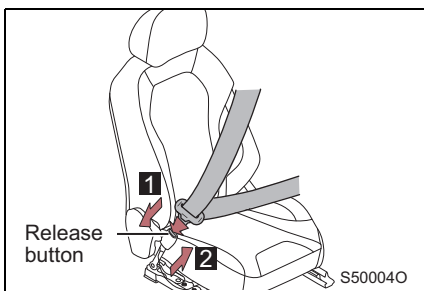
**Before driving, make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.**

### Correct use of seat belt



- Stretch the shoulder belt so that it slopes across the shoulder, but does not touch the neck or slip off the shoulder.
- Spread the lap belt as low as possible across the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat back so that you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

### Fastening and unfastening seat belt

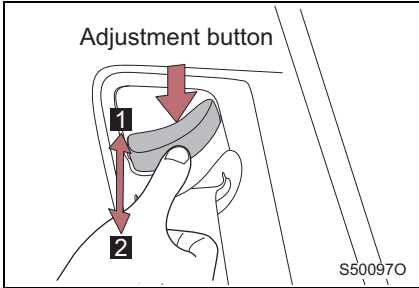


- 1 Fasten the seat belt**  
Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
- 2 Unfasten the seat belt**  
Press the release button.

### CAUTION

If any occupant does not fasten the seat belt, the instrument cluster will give an alarm prompt when the car reaches a certain speed.

## Adjusting seat belt height (front seats)

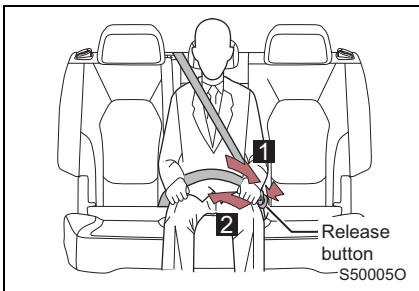


**1** Move upward

**2** Move downward

Press and hold the adjustment button and move the height adjuster up or down as desired until you hear a "click" sound.

## Rear center seat belt



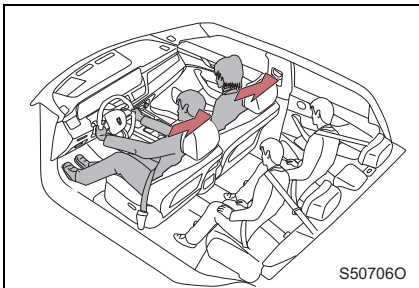
**1** Fasten the seat belt

Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.

**2** Unfasten the seat belt

Press the release button.

## Seat belt pretensioner



When the car is subjected to a serious frontal collision, the pretensioner will be activated to tighten the seat belt so as to quickly restrain the occupant's body for better protection.

However, the pretensioner may not be activated during a minor frontal collision, side collision or rear-end collision.

---

■ **Emergency locking retractor (ELR)**

The retractor will lock the seat belt in the event of emergency braking or a collision. It will also lock the seat belt if you lean forward too quickly. Slow and smooth movement can stretch the seat belt, so that you can move freely.

■ **Use of child seat belt**

The seat belts on the car are mainly designed for adults.

- Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- When children become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions for using the seat belt. (See P.28)

■ **Replacement of seat belt after pretensioner activation**

- If the car is involved in multiple collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will be activated during the first collision, but no longer be activated during the second and subsequent collisions.
- After the seat belt pretensioner is activated in a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to replace the seat belt in time.

■ **Seat belt regulations**

If there are seat belt regulations in your country or region, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement or installation of the seat belt.

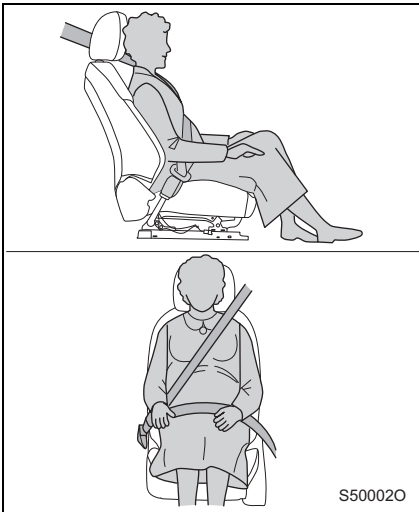
## ⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury due to emergency braking, emergency steering, or accidents, observe the following precautions; otherwise, serious injury or death may be caused.

### ■ Fasten the seat belt properly

- Make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.
- Be sure to fasten the seat belt correctly at all times.
- Do not over-recline the seat for comfort. The seat belt provides the maximum protection only when you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- Do not place the shoulder belt under your arms.
- Be sure to spread the seat belt as low as possible across the hips.

### ■ Pregnant women



- Please follow your doctor's advice and properly fasten the seat belt.
- Like other occupants, pregnant women should also spread the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. The shoulder belt should be stretched obliquely along the shoulders and across the chest, and avoid contact with the raised abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not properly fastened, in emergency braking or a collision, pregnant women and fetus may suffer from serious injury or even death.

### ■ Patients

Please follow your doctor's advice and properly fasten the seat belt.

### ■ When a child is in the vehicle

Do not let the child play the seat belt. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, asphyxiation or other serious injury that could result in death may be caused.

If the seat belt cannot be unfastened in such a case, cut off the seat belt with a pair of scissors.



## **WARNING**

### ■ **Fasten the seat belt correctly**

- It is very dangerous for the driver to sit in the wrong posture or fasten the seat belt in the wrong way. The pretensioners and load limiters cannot provide adequate protection due to incorrect fastening of seat belt, which may result in serious personal injury.
- The incorrect fastening of seat belt is very dangerous. During a collision, an occupant who fastens the seat belt incorrectly may collide with other persons or objects in the car, or may even be thrown out of the car, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, an occupant who fastens the seat belt correctly will be safer.

### ■ **Do not twist the seat belt when fastening it**

A twisted seat belt is very dangerous. During a collision, the seat belt cannot fully utilize its full width to absorb the impact force, so that more force is exerted on the bones under the seat belt, which can result in serious injury or even death.

### ■ **Do not share a seat belt with others**

It is very dangerous to share a seat belt with others (including children). Because the seat belt cannot properly disperse the impact force, and the occupants can collide with each other, causing serious injury or even death.

### ■ **Adjustable shoulder belt anchorages (front seats)**

Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the middle of the shoulder. The seat belt should be away from the neck, but shall not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, the protective effect of the seat belt may be reduced in the event of an accident, and serious injury or death may be caused in case of emergency braking, sudden steering or accident.

### ■ **Do not over-recline the seat**

Do not over-recline the seat for comfort. The seat belt provides the maximum protection only when you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.

### ■ **Do not drive the car with a damaged seat belt**

The use of a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may result in damage to the seat belt. The damaged seat belt fails to provide adequate protection in a collision. After an accident, all seat belt systems shall be thoroughly inspected by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer before use.



**WARNING****■ Seat belt pretensioner**

Immediately after any collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of seat belt pretensioners and airbags. As with airbags, the seat belt pretensioners can only be used once and must be replaced after activation in a collision. If not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the occupants may be increased during the second collision.

**■ Damage and wear of seat belt**

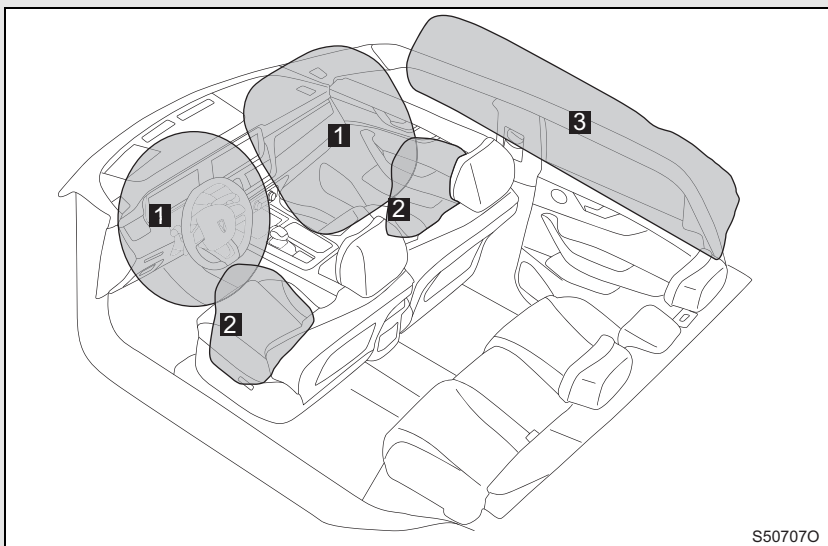
- Do not allow the seat belt or latch plate get caught in the door as this may damage the seat belt.
- Check the seat belt regularly. Check the seat belt for cuts, wear and looseness. Do not use a damaged seat belt, but replace it. A damaged seat belt cannot protect the occupant and could result in serious injury or even death.
- Make sure that the latch plate and buckle of seat belt are locked and the seat belt is not twisted.  
If the seat belt fails to work properly, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- If the car is involved in a serious accident, replace the seat belt together with the seat assembly even if there is no significant damage.
- Do not install, remove, modify, disassemble or discard the seat belt without authorization. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for necessary treatment.

**CAUTION****■ Keep seat belt clean**

If the seat belt is dirty, it may be difficult to be retracted. Please keep the seat belt clean. (See P.346)

# Airbag

The airbag is a passive safety protection device designed to mitigate or avoid the injury to the occupants when the car is subjected to serious collisions that may cause serious injuries to the occupants. In certain serious collisions, the airbag can be deployed. The car is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags and seat belts work together to reduce the risk of serious injury or even death. (The shape of the deployed airbag is only for reference)



S507070

**1 Driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag**

To help protect the driver's and front passenger's head and chest from the impact of interior components.

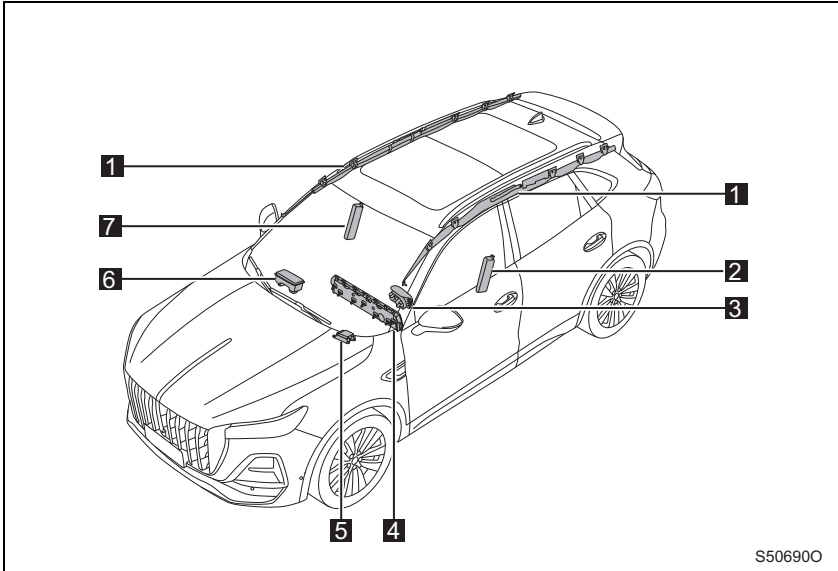
**2 Driver's seat airbag/front passenger's seat airbag**

To help protect the driver's and front passenger's torso.

**3 Curtain airbag\***

To help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and rear outer occupant.

## Components of supplemental restraint system (SRS)



- |                                        |                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Curtain airbag*               | <b>2</b> Driver's seat airbag     |
| <b>3</b> Driver's airbag               | <b>4</b> SRS fault warning lamp   |
| <b>5</b> Airbag control unit           | <b>6</b> Front passenger's airbag |
| <b>7</b> Front passenger's seat airbag |                                   |

These are the main components of the SRS.

In the event of severe frontal or side collision, the SRS triggers the airbag inflator. The chemical reaction in the airbag inflator can quickly fill the airbag with non-toxic gas to avoid injury to the occupants due to a secondary collision with interior components.



## WARNING

### ■ Precautions for airbag

Please observe the following precautions for airbags. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

- The driver and other occupants in the car must correctly fasten the seat belts.

The airbag is an auxiliary device used in conjunction with the seat belt.

- The driver's airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the driver is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused.
- The high-risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 0-100 mm of deployment. Keep at least 300 mm away from the driver's airbag. This is the distance from the center of the steering wheel to the sternum of the driver. If you are sitting at a distance of less than 300 mm, you can adjust the driving position using the following methods:
  - Move the seat to the rear as far as possible, but it is still the prerequisite to depress the pedals easily.
  - Slightly tilt the seat back backward. If it is difficult to see the road ahead after the seat back is tilted, use a hard anti-slip seat cushion to lift the body or raise the seat.
  - Adjust the steering wheel to tilt it downward as far as possible. This allows the airbag to face the driver's chest rather than the head and neck.

When the driver's seat is adjusted in accordance with the above recommendations, the pedals and steering wheel should be kept in the driver's control range, and control switches of the instrument panel are within the driver's field of view.

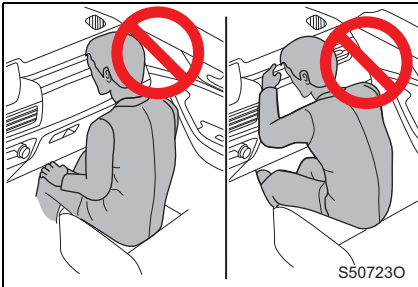
- When scrapping the car or the components of SRS and pretensioner seat belts, please observe the relevant safety regulations.

### ■ Fasten the seat belt properly

Always fasten the seat belt when driving a car equipped with airbags. It is very dangerous to rely solely on the airbag in an accident. Because only the airbag may not be able to avoid serious injury. Therefore, be sure to fasten the seat belt when driving or riding the car.

**⚠ WARNING****■ Precautions for airbag**

- The front passenger's airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the front passenger is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused. The front passenger's seat should be as far away from the airbag as possible, and the seat back should be adjusted so that the front passenger can sit upright.
- Improperly seated/protected infants and young children may suffer from serious injury or death due to airbag deployment. Infants and young children who are unable to use the seat belts shall be properly restrained by child restraint systems. We strongly recommend that the infants and young children use child seats and the child seats be placed on the rear seats of the car. For infants and young children, the rear seats are safer than the front passenger's seat.



- Do not lean against the instrument panel, A-pillars, roof side rails, door parts or seat edges, otherwise, when the front passenger's airbag is deployed, it may cause a strong head impact, resulting in serious injury or even death (when children are in the car, more attention shall be paid).

 **WARNING**

■ **Precautions for airbag**



- Do not allow children to stand in front of the front passenger's airbag.
- Do not allow children to sit on the front passenger's lap. Do not place items on the front passenger's lap.



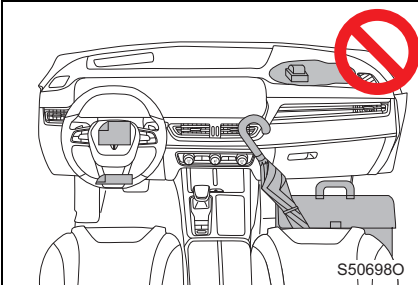
- Do not lean against the doors, roof side rails, A-pillars, B-pillars or C-pillars.

# **WARNING**

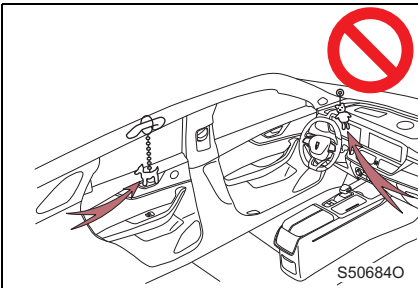
## ■ Precautions for airbag



- Do not face the door and kneel on the seat or extend the head and hand out of the car.



- Do not attach or lean any items to the instrument panel, driver's airbag cover, etc. These items may be ejected upon deployment of driver's airbag or front passenger's airbag.



- Do not tie anything to the doors, windshields, windows, A-pillars, B-pillars, C-pillars, roof side rails, roof grab handles, etc.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If the curtain airbag is deployed, these objects may be ejected, resulting in serious injury or death.



## WARNING

### ■ Precautions for airbag

- Do not use such seat accessories that will cover the seat airbag or its deployment area, as they may interfere with deployment of the airbag.
- Do not strike the area where the airbag is located or apply excessive force to it, as this may cause the airbag to malfunction.
- Do not touch the related parts immediately after the airbag is deployed (inflated), as they may be hot.
- If you feel it difficult to breathe after deployment of the airbag, open the door or window for ventilation, or leave the car if it is safe to do so. Rinse the residue on the body as soon as possible so as to avoid skin irritation.
- If the area where the airbag is located (such as the driver's airbag cover and instrument panel) is damaged or cracked, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement.

### ■ After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision

The SRS can only provide the protection in an accident for one time. After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision, please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement of airbag, airbag control unit and related components, and the original components shall not be used.

### ■ Modification and scrapping of SRS components

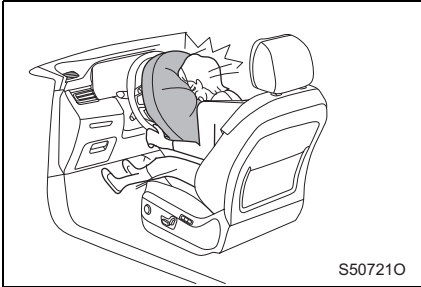
Please do not scrap the car or make the following modifications before consulting an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Otherwise, the airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) unintentionally, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbag.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument panel, seat or seat trims, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar or roof side rail.
- Repair or modification of front fender, front bumper or sides of passenger compartment.
- Retrofitting of front grille with snow plow, winch and other tools.
- Modification of suspension system.
- Installation of portable two-way radio.



## ■ When the airbag is deployed (inflated)



- The airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the occupant is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused.
  - The airbag deploys with ignition sound and smoke, but no fire will occur. If people with respiratory tract diseases such as asthma inhale the gas, they may experience breathing difficulties. In this case, it is relatively safe to immediately evacuate from the car. If evacuation is impossible, open the windows and doors to take in the fresh air.
  - The airbag deployment speed is very high, which may cause minor scratch, scalding or other injuries.
  - If the residue (gas, etc.) from airbag deployment splashes into the eyes or attaches to the skin, rinse the affected area with fresh water as soon as possible. Sensitive skin may have allergic reactions.
  - The SRS module components (including the steering wheel, airbag cover and inflator), as well as the front seat, A-pillar and roof side rail may become hot in a few minutes. The airbag itself may also become hot.
  - The front windshield may be broken.
- ### ■ Airbag trigger factors
- The triggering range of airbag in various accident situations cannot be determined in general terms, because the specific circumstances of the accidents vary greatly. For example, the nature (hardness) of the object that the car collides with, the angle of collision, and the speed of the car are all important trigger factors for the airbag.
  - The decisive trigger factors for the airbag are the deceleration and pressure curves that are produced in the event of a collision. The sensors installed on the car, together with the electronic control units, identify the severity of the collision, and thus selectively trigger the airbag in a timely manner. If the deceleration value or pressure value generated and measured during a collision is lower than the reference value preset in the control unit, the airbag will not deploy even though the car may have been deformed to a certain extent in the accident.

### ■ Operating conditions (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag)

- In the event of a more severe frontal collision, where the degree of collision exceeds a set threshold, the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag will be deployed.

However, if the car hits a movable or deformable object (such as a parked vehicle or a signal post) or in case of an "underrun" (such as a collision in which the front of the car "penetrates" beneath a truck's cargo compartment), the airbag may not deploy.

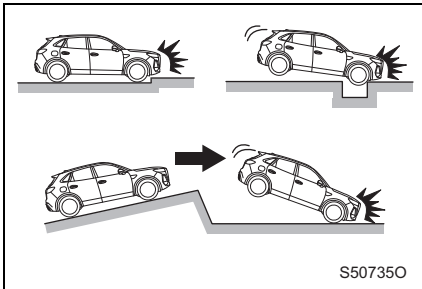
- In some collisions, the forward deceleration of the car is very close to the design threshold, but the frontal airbag and seat belt pretensioner may not be activated.

### ■ Operating conditions (seat airbag and curtain airbag)

- In the event of a severe side collision, the collision degree exceeds the set threshold, the seat airbag and curtain airbag on collision side will deploy.
- In some special accidents, the seat airbag and curtain airbag may deploy together with the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag.

### ■ Other cases where the airbag may deploy (except for collisions)

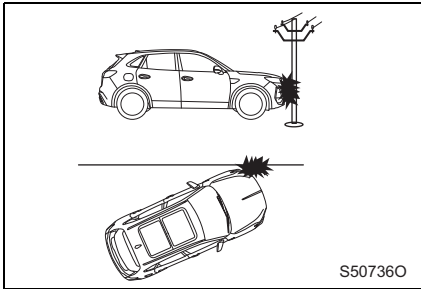
If the bottom of the car is severely impacted, the driver's airbag and front passenger's airbag also be deployed.



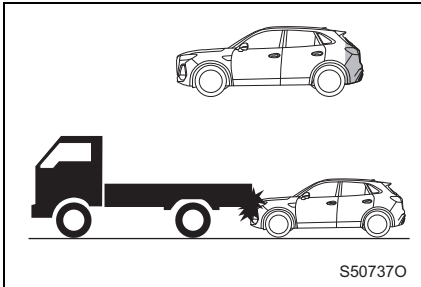
- The car hits a curb, sidewalk edge, or hard surface
- The car falls into or jumps over a deep pit
- The wheels are hard grounded or the car falls

### ■ Cases where the airbag (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag) may not deploy

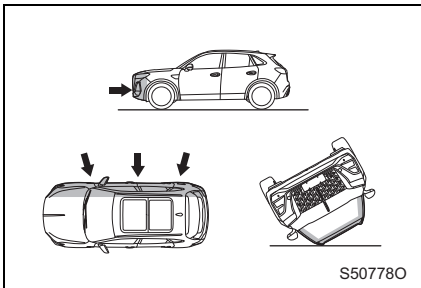
The driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag may not deploy during the collision with cylindrical objects such as utility poles and trees, non-frontal collision with walls and highway guardrails, rear-end collision, collision with the rear of truck or going under the bottom of truck, low-speed frontal collision, side collision or rollover. However, as long as the collision causes the car to have a sufficient forward deceleration, the airbag may deploy.



- Collision with cylindrical objects such as utility poles and trees
- Non-frontal collision with walls and highway guardrails



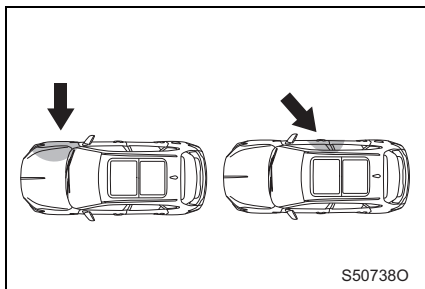
- Rear-end collision
- Collision with the rear of the truck, or going under the bottom of truck



- Low-speed frontal collision
- Side collision
- Rollover

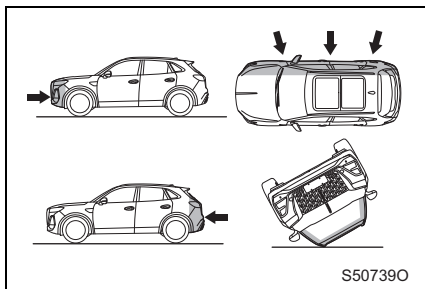
### ■ Cases where the airbag (seat airbag/curtain airbag) may not deploy

If the car is subjected to a side collision of non-passenger compartment, or a side collision of car body at an angle, the seat airbag/curtain airbag may not deploy



- Side collision of non-passenger compartment
- Side collision of car body at an angle

Generally, the seat airbag/curtain airbag will not deploy when the car is subjected to a low-speed frontal collision, low-speed side collision, rear-end collision or rollover.

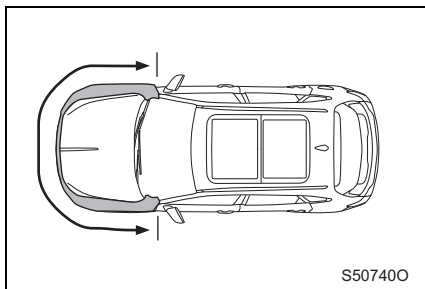


- Low-speed frontal collision
- Low-speed side collision
- Rear-end collision
- Rollover

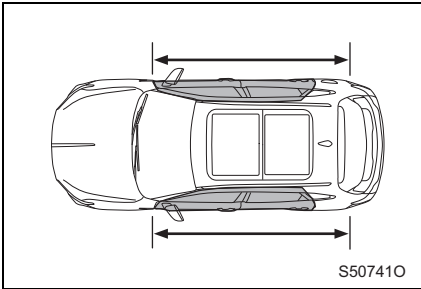
### ■ When to contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be inspected and/or repaired. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.

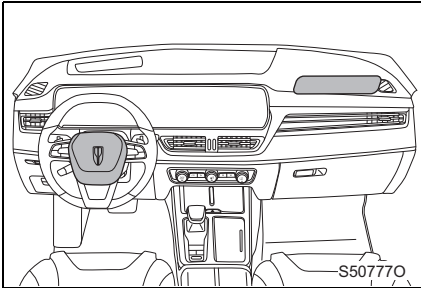
- Any airbag has been deployed.



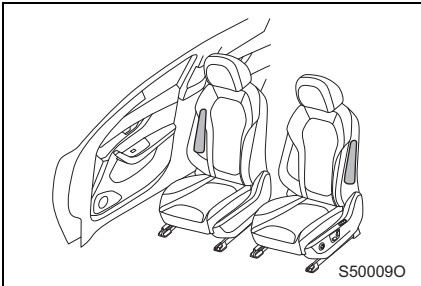
- The front of the car is damaged or deformed, or a collision in which the airbag is not deployed has occurred.



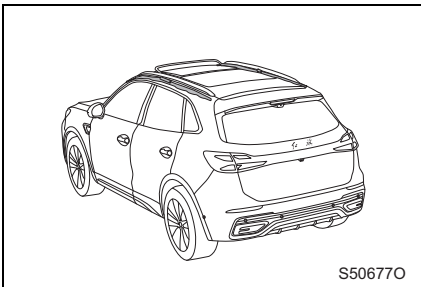
- The door or the area around the door is damaged or deformed, or a collision in which the seat airbag and curtain airbag are not deployed has occurred.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the driver's airbag cover or the instrument panel near the front passenger's airbag.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the surface of the seat equipped with seat airbag.



- There are scratches on the curtain airbag, and cracks or other damages on the parts such as the A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar protectors, roof, handle, reading lamp, etc.

# Child safety information

**Always observe the following precautions when any child is inside the car.**

**Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.**

- It is recommended that the child sit in the rear seats to prevent accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- During driving, use rear door child safety lock and window locking switch to prevent children from opening the door and operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not allow the child to operate devices that may pinch any body part (such as power window, engine hood, trunk lid, seat, etc.)



### **WARNING**

■ **Do not allow children to carry the vehicle key or play alone in the vehicle**

● It is very dangerous for children to play in the folded rear seat. Once the seat back returns to its original position, children may be trapped inside the closed trunk and unable to leave. To prevent such incidents, make sure the seat back is locked in place.

● Never leave children unattended in the car. Do not allow children to carry or use the key.

Children may start the car or operate the shift lever. Children may also get injured while playing with windows, sunroof or other vehicle equipment. In addition, too high or too low temperature inside the car may cause fatal injury to children.

■ **Always lock the car, and keep the key out of reach of children**

It is dangerous if the car is locked improperly while leaving the car or place the key within the reach of children. The child who enters the trunk through an open trunk may get locked in the trunk by accident. Especially in summer, the child may suffer from heat exhaustion, resulting in brain injury and even death. Regardless of whether you have children, always lock the doors and trunk. Also, for additional safety, make sure the rear seat backs are locked.

## 1-1. Instructions for safe use

# Child restraint system

**FAW strongly recommends that you use the child restraint system.**

### Precautions

The study shows that the child will be safer if the child restraint systems is installed in the rear seat other than in the front passenger's seat.

- Please select the appropriate child restraint system according to the weight and size of the child.
- For installation details, see the instructions attached to the child restraint system.  
This manual provides general installation instructions.
- FAW recommends that you use a child restraint system that complies with GB 27887-2011 regulation.

### Type of child restraint system

According to GB 27887-2011 regulation, the child restraint system can be divided into the following five groups:

Group 0: < 10 kg

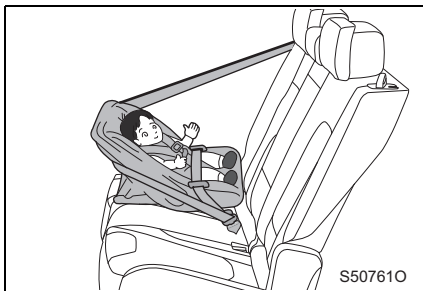
Group 0+: < 13 kg

Group I: 9-18 kg

Group II: 15-25 kg

Group III: 22-36 kg

Here are 3 types of child restraint systems that can be secured with seat belts:



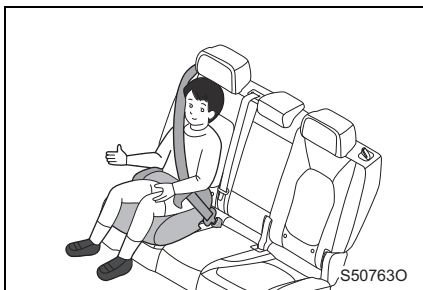
► Infant seat (young child seat)

Equivalent to Group 0 and Group 0+ in the GB 27887-2011 regulation.



► Child seat (convertible seat)

Equivalent to Group 0+ and Group I in the GB 27887-2011 regulation.



► Junior seat (booster seat)

Equivalent to Group II and Group III in the GB 27887-2011 regulation.



**WARNING**

- **The car has no airbag deactivation function, so it is strictly prohibited to install any child restraint system in the front seat. Please install the child restraint system in the outside rear position.**
- **Precautions for child restraint system**
  - Even if the child restraint system is properly used, the head or any part of body cannot lean to the door, seat or roof side rail (where the seat airbag or curtain airbag may deploy). Otherwise, the large impact force generated by the deployed seat airbag or curtain airbag may result in serious injury and even death to the child.
  - The child must be restrained by a seat belt or child restraint system according to the weight and size of the child to effectively protect the child in the event of an accident and emergency braking. Holding the child in your arms does not replace the role of a child restraint system. During an accident, the child may collide with the windshield or be squeezed between you and the compartment.
  - Always follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure the child restraint system is securely fastened at all times.  
Failure to secure the child restraint system is very dangerous. During emergency braking or a collision, the child restraint system can move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants.

### Information about the applicability of different seating positions for seat belt-secured child restraint system

| Weight group        | Seating position (or other positions) |                   |                  |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
|                     | Front passenger's seat                | Outside rear seat | Rear center seat |
| Group 0: < 10 kg    | X                                     | U                 | X                |
| Group 0+: < 13 kg   | X                                     | U                 | X                |
| Group I: 9-18 kg    | X                                     | U                 | X                |
| Group II: 15-25 kg  | X                                     | U                 | X                |
| Group III: 22-36 kg | X                                     | U                 | X                |

The meanings of above alphabets are:

- U: The general child restraint system approved for this weight group is applicable.
- X: This seating position is not applicable to the child restraint system in this weight group.

## Information about the applicability of different ISOFIX positions for ISOFIX child restraint system

| Weight group        | Size | Anchorage | ISOFIX position in the car |                 |
|---------------------|------|-----------|----------------------------|-----------------|
|                     |      |           | Rear left seat             | Rear right seat |
| Carry cot           | F    | ISO/L1    | X                          | X               |
|                     | G    | ISO/L2    | X                          | X               |
| Group 0: < 10 kg    | E    | ISO/R1    | IL                         | IL              |
| Group 0+: < 13 kg   | E    | ISO/R1    | IL                         | IL              |
|                     | D    | ISO/R2    | IL                         | IL              |
|                     | C    | ISO/R3    | IL                         | IL              |
| Group I: 9-18 kg    | D    | ISO/R2    | IL                         | IL              |
|                     | C    | ISO/R3    | IL                         | IL              |
|                     | B    | ISO/F2    | IUF                        | IUF             |
|                     | B1   | ISO/F2X   | IUF                        | IUF             |
|                     | A    | ISO/F3    | IUF                        | IUF             |
| Group II: 15-25 kg  |      | -         | IL                         | IL              |
| Group III: 22-36 kg |      | -         | IL                         | IL              |

The meanings of above alphabets are:

IUF: The general front-facing ISOFIX child restraint system approved for this weight group is applicable.

IL: The special ISOFIX child restraint systems as listed are applicable, which may be for special vehicles, or of restricted or semi-general categories.

X: The ISOFIX position is not applicable to the ISOFIX child restraint system in this weight group and/or size class.

### ■ Choose an appropriate child restraint system

- Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.



### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Manufacturer's instructions for child restraint system**

Always observe the manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using a child restraint system, otherwise the desired protection may not be obtained.

#### ■ **When a child is in the vehicle**

Do not let the child play the seat belt. If the seat belt twists around the neck, the child may suffer from suffocation or other serious injury, and even death. If the seat belt cannot be unfastened in such a case, cut off the seat belt with a pair of scissors.

#### ■ **When the child restraint system is not used**

- The child restraint system should be properly secured on the seat even if it is not being used.

Do not place an unsecured child restraint system in the passenger compartment.

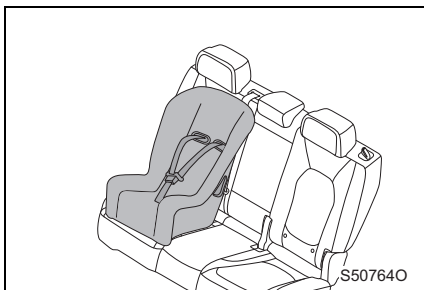
- If the child restraint system must be removed, remove it and secure it in the trunk. If the headrest is removed to facilitate the installation of child restraint system, always refit the headrest before driving. Otherwise, the occupants may get injured in case of emergency braking or accident.

#### ■ **Use the child restraint system**

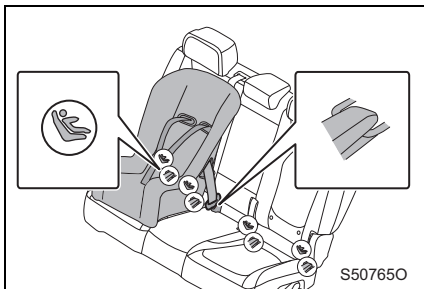
If an inappropriate child restraint system is used for this car, the infant or child may not be properly protected, and the serious injury and even death may occur (in case of emergency braking or accident).

## Installation of child restraint system

**Please observe the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. Secure the child restraint system to the seat with seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchorages. Fix the top tether during the installation of the child restraint system.**

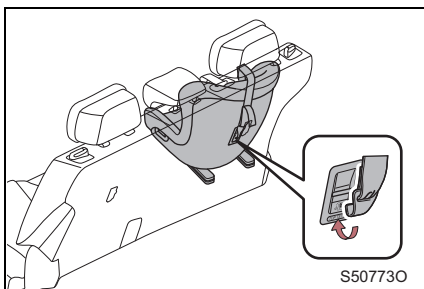


Secure with seat belt.



Secure with ISOFIX rigid anchorages.

The outside rear seats are equipped with lower anchorages. (There are marks showing the anchorage positions on the seats)



Anchorage support (for top tether).

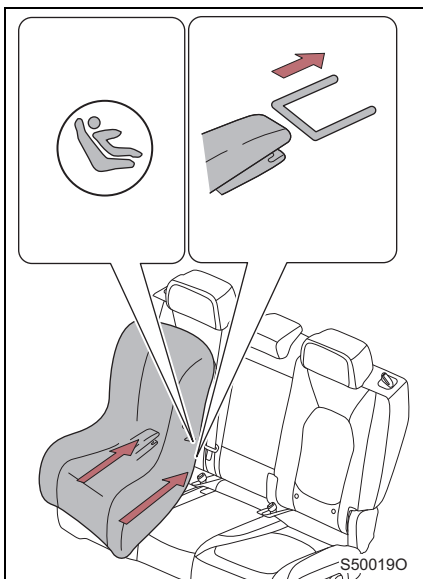
The outside rear seats are equipped with anchorage supports.

## Installation of child restraint system with seat belt

Be sure to properly fasten the seat belt or install the child seat in accordance with the child seat manufacturer's instructions, as the installation of the child seat is different.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, the headrest can be rearranged or removed to ensure that the child seat is properly installed and adjusted.

## Installation of child restraint system with ISOFIX rigid anchorages



**Step 1** Slightly increase the gap between the seat cushion and the seat back.

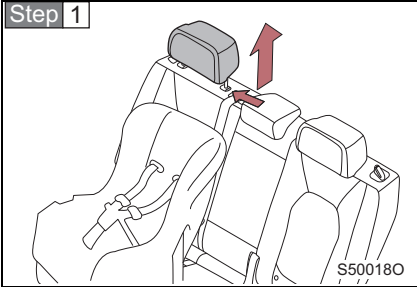
**Step 2** Insert the buckle into the special rod.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, remove the headrest before installing the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system has a top tether, fix the top tether onto the anchorage support.

## Child restraint system with top tether

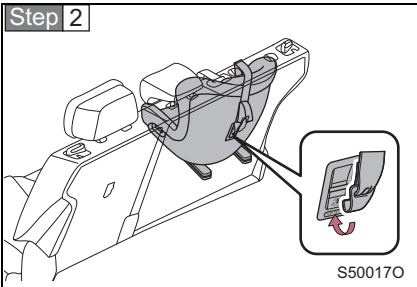
Step 1



Secure the child restraint system with seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchorages.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, remove the headrest before installing the child restraint system.

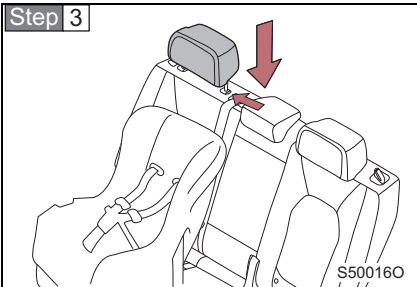
Step 2



Clamp the hook onto the anchorage support, and fasten the top tether.

Make sure that the top tether is fastened.

Step 3



Reinstall the headrest.

**⚠ WARNING**

■ **When installing the child restraint system**

Please observe the following precautions, otherwise serious injury or death may occur.

- Tie up the top tether firmly, and make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Do not tie the top tether to any object rather than the anchorage support.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to make sure it is securely installed.
- Do not adjust the seat after the child restraint system is installed. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Please observe the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.



- If the driver's seat causes inconvenience to the installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat.
- Adjust the front passenger's seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.



**⚠ WARNING**

- Please observe the instructions attached to the child restraint system, and secure the child restraint system in place. The improper securing will cause serious injury and even death to the child or other occupants in case of emergency braking or accident.



Type 1



Type 2

S501310

- The labels pasted on inner and outer sides of sun visor on front passenger's side remind you not to place rear-facing child restraint systems on airbag-protected seats.  
For details of label, see the figure.

**■ Secure the child restraint system to the anchorage correctly**

When using a lower anchorage, make sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorage and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint system. Make sure that the child restraint system is securely fastened, otherwise serious injury or death of the child or other occupants may occur in emergency braking or in an accident.

# Precautions for exhaust gas

**Exhaust gas contains substances harmful to human body.**



### **WARNING**

Exhaust gas contains colorless and odorless harmful gas - carbon monoxide (CO).

Please observe the following precautions. Otherwise the exhaust gas may enter the vehicle, causing dizziness and accidents, or seriously endangering health and even leading to death.

#### **■ Important when driving**

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you can smell exhaust gas in the vehicle even if the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle as soon as possible.

#### **■ When parking**

- If the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated or closed place (such as garage), please turn off the engine.
- Do not keep the engine running for a long time.  
If this situation cannot be avoided, please park the vehicle in an open place and make sure that the exhaust gas does not enter the vehicle.
- Do not keep the engine running in places with deep snow or where are snowing. If snow mounds form around the vehicle while the engine is running, accumulated exhaust gas may enter the vehicle.

#### **■ Exhaust pipe**

The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If there are holes or cracks, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise due to corrosion, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and repair the vehicle.

### Indicator lamp

**Indicator lamps indicate the current working status of the vehicle systems.**



Left turn signal indicator lamp



Right turn signal indicator lamp



Position lamp ON indicator lamp



Door opening indicator lamp



Low beam ON indicator lamp



High beam ON indicator lamp



Front fog lamp ON indicator lamp



Rear fog lamp ON indicator lamp



IHC system working indicator lamp



HDC system working indicator lamp



ESC system working indicator lamp (Flashing)



ESC system OFF indicator lamp



Idle stop-start working indicator lamp



Idle stop-start limited indicator lamp



Idle stop-start OFF indicator lamp



TSR system intelligent speed limit - traffic sign recognition indicator lamp



EPB working indicator lamp



AUTO HOLD working indicator lamp



FCW system OFF indicator lamp



AEB system OFF indicator lamp



LDW/LKA system ON indicator lamp



LDW/LKA system working indicator lamp

1-2. Warning lamps and indicator lamps



Cruise control ON indicator lamp



Cruise control working indicator lamp



ACC system ON indicator lamp



ACC system working indicator lamp



SACC system steering assist ON indicator lamp



SACC system steering assist working indicator lamp



BSD system OFF indicator lamp



Maintenance indicator lamp



Failed key identification indicator lamp



Outside ambient temperature display Indicator lamp



Unable to switch indicator lamp in driving mode

### Warning lamp

If any warning lamp comes on or flashes, please keep calm and take the following measures. If any warning lamp comes on or flashes but then goes out, it does not necessarily indicate that the system is faulty. However, if this situation persists, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle.

#### List of warning lamps

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Engine control system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If this warning lamp remains on after the engine is started, it indicates a fault in the engine control system.</li> <li>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></li> </ul>                   |
|    | <b>Fault warning lamp of engine exhaust monitoring system</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If this warning lamp remains on after the engine is started, it indicates a fault in the exhaust monitoring system.</li> <li>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></li> </ul> |
|  | <b>12 V battery charging fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If this warning lamp remains on after the engine is started, it indicates a fault in the charging system.</li> <li>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></li> </ul>                         |
|  | <b>Fuel system warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low fuel level or a fault in the fuel system.</li> <li>→ <b>Please fill up the fuel or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <p><b>Abnormal oil pressure warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low oil pressure.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                 |
|    | <p><b>SRS fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in SRS.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                                                                      |
|    | <p><b>Seat belt unfastened warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates that the driver's or passenger's seat belt is not fastened.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Fasten the driver's and passenger's seat belts.</b></p>                                                                    |
|    | <p><b>Transmission system/electronic shift system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in transmission system/electronic shift system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p> |
|   | <p><b>Engine IMMO system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the engine IMMO system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                               |
|  | <p><b>Ignition switch fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in engine (ignition) switch.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                                     |
|  | <p><b>Smart start system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the smart start system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                                    |
|  | <p><b>Low key battery warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low key battery.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Replace the key battery.</b></p>                                                                                                                                         |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the electronic wiper system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                                   |
|    | <b>Lamp unit fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in external lamp units.</li> </ul> → <b>Check for faults in external lamp units and harness connectors or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.</b>                                                       |
|    | <b>Cooling system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a high coolant temperature or a fault in the cooling system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                  |
|    | <b>Low brake fluid level/brake system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the brake system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. It is risky to keep driving in this case.</b>                    |
|  | <b>Brake system fault/HBA warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates degraded brake system performance or a fault in the brake assist.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. It is risky to keep driving in this case.</b> |
|  | <b>Excessive brake lining wear warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates excessive wear of brake lining.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and replace the brake lining.</b>                                                                     |
|  | <b>EPS system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in EPS.</li> </ul> → <b>Please drive carefully and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                                                         |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>EPS system major fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a major fault in the EPS.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                          |
|    | <b>ESC system fault warning lamp (remains on)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the ESC system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                       |
|    | <b>ABS system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the ABS system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                    |
|    | <b>AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the AUTO HOLD system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                        |
|    | <b>EPB system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the EPB system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                               |
|  | <b>Tire pressure abnormal/system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the TPMS system or abnormal tire pressure.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|  | <b>Automatic running lamp/automatic wiper function fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the automatic running lamp/automatic wiper function.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>          |



| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Automatic headlamp leveling system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the automatic headlamp leveling system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|    | <b>Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the driving mode selector.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                   |
|    | <b>Idle stop-start system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the idle stop-start system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                         |
|    | <b>SOS fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the SOS system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                        |
|   | <b>Low coolant level warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low coolant level.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                      |
|  | <b>Driver assistance system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the driver assistance system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                     |
|  | <b>Wireless charging fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the wireless charging function.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                          |

## 1-2. Warning lamps and indicator lamps

| Warning lamp                                                                       | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | <b>GPF cleaning warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates that the particulate filter needs to be cleaned by driving vehicle.</li></ul> → <b>Clean by driving vehicle or immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|   | <b>GPF fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates that the carbon load in the particulate filter has exceeded the standard and cannot self-clean.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>    |
|   | <b>HDC system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates a fault in the HDC system.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                  |
|   | <b>4WD system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates a fault in the 4WD system.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                             |
|  | <b>Shock absorber system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates a fault in the shock absorber system.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                            |

Note: When the oil pressure warning lamp, high coolant temperature warning lamp or any other indicator lamp comes on, the warning buzzer sounds.

# Engine IMMO system

In order to prevent the vehicle from being stolen, the smart key has a built-in password chip. If the smart key is not registered in the IMMO system in advance, it is impossible to start the engine with the smart key. Different information is registered in the key for different vehicles.

Do not leave the smart key in the vehicle but carry it with you when leaving the vehicle.

This system helps to prevent vehicle theft, but does not prevent all theft and can not guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.

**Carry the registered key with you and press the engine switch to deactivate the IMMO system.**

### ■ Conditions that may cause system failure

- The key was strongly impacted
- The key is flooded
- The key is at a high temperature place (e.g. on the instrument panel exposed to the sun)
- A magnetic key chain is used
- The key has been cleaned with ultrasonic cleaner
- The key has approached or come into contact with a key of other vehicle (key with built-in transponder chip)

- **If the engine cannot be started by using the correct method, the engine IMMO system may fail. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect your vehicle.**



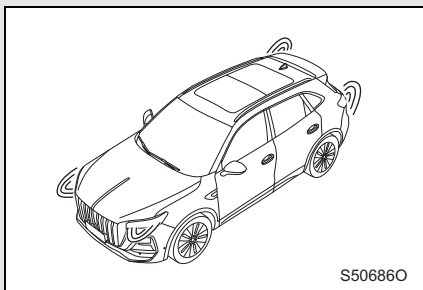
### CAUTION

#### ■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not modify or disassemble the IMMO system. Otherwise, the IMMO system will not work properly.

### Body anti-theft system

The body anti-theft system mainly monitors the status of four doors, engine hood and trunk lid. When the system detects someone entering by force, it will give an alarm and make the turn signal lamps flash continuously.



#### Body anti-theft system works.

After the driver and all passengers getting off the vehicle, close the doors, trunk lid and engine hood and lock all doors.

#### Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Perform any of the following operations:

- Use intelligent unlocking or remote unlocking to unlock the vehicle.
- Turn on the engine switch.

#### ■ Items to be checked before locking the vehicle

To prevent accidental alarm triggering, make sure that there are no people, valuables and other personal belongings in the vehicle and all windows and sunroof are closed before locking the vehicle.

#### ■ When 12 V battery is disconnected

Be sure to deactivate the alarm system.

If the 12 V battery is disconnected before the alarm is deactivated, the alarm may be triggered after the battery is reconnected.



#### CAUTION

#### ■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not modify or disassemble the IMMO system. Otherwise, the IMMO system will not work properly.

## **2-1. Vehicle inspection**

Inspection before  
driving ..... 70

## **2-2. Driving in winter**

Driving essentials in  
winter ..... 71

## **2-3. Refueling**

Opening fuel  
tank cap ..... 74

# Inspection before driving

**Before driving, it is recommended to check the followings:**

- Tire
- Lighting
- Whether there are obstacles around the vehicle
- Whether there is any liquid under the vehicle (dripping water after use of A/C and from the drain hole after cooling of the exhaust pipe are normal phenomenon)

Please obey local regulations and designated traffic regulations, and always remember to drive safely.

# Driving essentials in winter

**Before driving in winter, please make necessary preparations and inspections. Be sure to drive in a way suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.**

■ Preparations for driving in winter

- Use oil and fluids suitable for outdoor temperature.
  - Oil
  - Coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Ensure good battery performance.
- If necessary, install four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for driving wheels.

Make sure that all tires are of the same model and brand, and that the size of tire chains matches that of the tires.

■ Before driving

Take the following measures according to driving conditions:

- Do not force open the frozen windows or move the frozen wipers; pour warm water on the frozen parts to melt the ice, and wipe the water immediately to prevent freezing.
- To ensure the normal operation of the fan, clear the snow off the air inlet grille.
- Remove the ice accumulated on the chassis of the vehicle.
- Regularly check and remove the snow and ice that may accumulate on the wheelhouse or brake.
- Remove the snow or mud from soles of shoes before entering the vehicle.

■ During driving

Accelerate slowly and slow down appropriately according to the road conditions.

### Selection of tire chain

Use the correct tire chain size when installing tire chains.

The size of tire chain should be adjusted according to the size of each tire.

### Regulations on the use of tire chains

Depending on the location and type of road, the regulations regarding the use of tire chains will vary. Be sure to check local regulations before installing tire chains.

---

#### ■ Tire chain

When installing and removing tire chains, please observe the following precautions.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe place.
- Re-tension the tire chains after driving 0.5-1.0 km.
- Install tire chains on the driving tires.
- Follow the instructions provided in the manual attached to the tire chain.



**WARNING****■ Driving with snow tires**

In order to avoid the possibility of losing control of the vehicle and causing serious personal injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Use the specified type of tire.
- Maintain the recommended tire pressure.
- Do not exceed the road speed limit or the prescribed speed limit for snow tires when driving.
- Snow tires should be fitted to all wheels.

**■ Driving with tire chains**

In order to avoid the possibility of unsafe driving and serious personal injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not exceed the prescribed speed limit for tire chains when driving.
- Avoid driving on uneven or pitted roads.
- Avoid sharp turns or emergency braking.
- Slow down fully before entering the curve to ensure that the vehicle can be controlled.

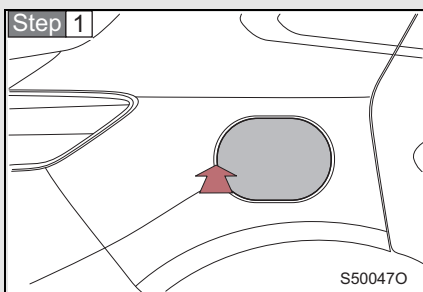
# Opening fuel tank cap

**Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.**

■ Before adding fuel

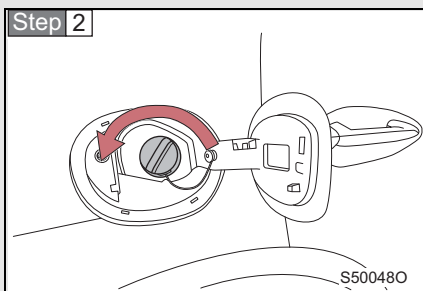
Depress the brake pedal, set the shift lever to P position, apply the parking brake, turn off the engine switch, and make sure all doors and windows are closed.

■ Opening fuel filler cap

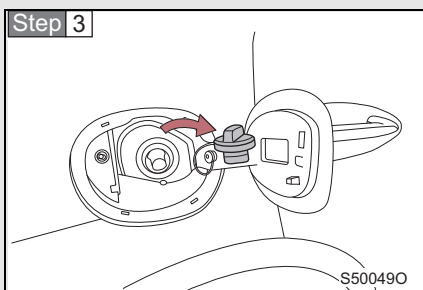


Press and open the fuel filler cap.

The fuel filler cap can be opened only when the entire vehicle is unlocked.



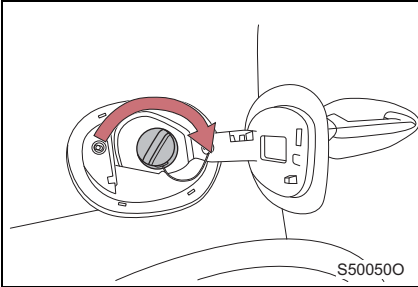
Rotate counterclockwise to open the fuel tank cap.



Hang the fuel tank cap on the fuel filler cap.

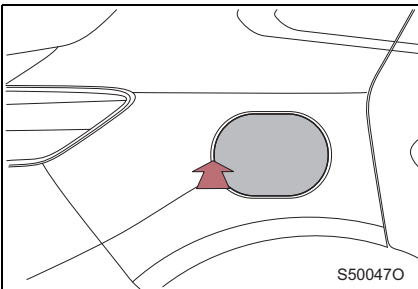
## Closing fuel tank cap and fuel filler cap

### ■ Closing fuel tank cap



When refitting the fuel tank cap, screw it until you hear a "click" sound.

### ■ Closing fuel filler cap



Press the rear side of fuel filler cap, it indicates that the fuel filler cap is closed until you hear a "click" sound.

### ■ Fuel type

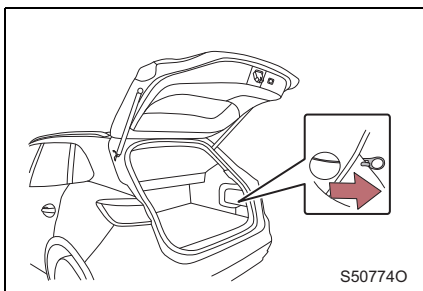
Use RON95 and above unleaded or ethanol gasoline.

### ■ Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 64 L.

### ■ In case of failure to open the fuel filler cap

In case of failure to open the fuel filler cap due to low battery or other reasons, the fuel filler cap can be unlocked by emergency unlocking cable.



Open the access cover on the right side of trunk, pull the emergency unlocking cable, and follow the steps in [Opening fuel filler cap] to open the fuel filler cap.

### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Adding fuel**

Please observe the following precautions when refueling:

- Before opening the fuel filler cap and fuel tank cap, it is necessary to remove static electricity that may be present on your body. In the presence of static electricity, the fuel may catch fire due to discharge spark.
- Do not allow people with static electricity approach the open fuel tank.
- When opening the fuel tank cap, grip it and unscrew it slowly. When the temperature is high, the pressure in the fuel tank is high, and fuel vapor may be ejected from the fuel filler. If you hear a "poof" sound while loosening the fuel tank cap, please do not continue to open the fuel tank cap. After the sound disappears, open it slowly.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapor when refueling, because the fuel contains harmful substances.
- It is strictly forbidden to smoke or use mobile phones when refueling. Otherwise it may cause fire.
- Do not touch other people or objects with static electricity. Otherwise static electricity may accumulate and ignite the fuel.
- Comply with all precautions publicized in the gas station.

#### ■ **Precautions when replacing fuel tank cap**

Do not use products other than the original fuel tank cap from FAW. Otherwise it may cause poor sealing and lead to accidents.

**CAUTION****■ Adding fuel**

When adding fuel, do not let it overflow. Otherwise it may damage the vehicle, such as causing abnormal operation of the evaporative emission control system, damaging fuel system components or body paintwork.



**3-1. Key information**

Key .....80

**3-2. Opening, closing  
and locking doors  
and trunk lid**

Door .....83

Trunk lid .....87

PEPS .....92

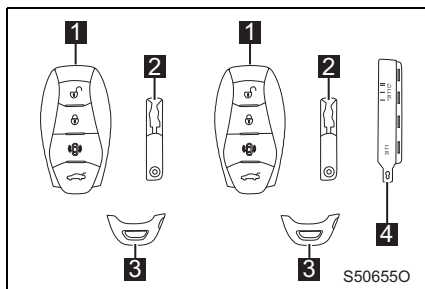
**3-3. Loading**

Goods and  
luggage .....97

# Key

## Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys.



### 1 Smart key

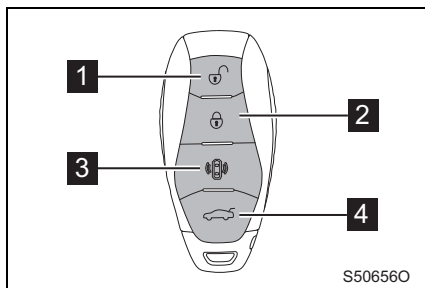
- Operate the PEPS system (See P.92)
- Operate the wireless remote control function

### 2 Mechanical key

### 3 Key end cover

### 4 Key number plate

## Wireless remote control



### 1 Unlock button

Press the button to unlock the doors; press and hold the button to open all windows and sunroof.

### 2 Lock button

Press the button to lock the doors; press and hold the button to close all windows and sunroof; press the button twice consecutively to trigger the vehicle locating function.

### 3 Remote start button

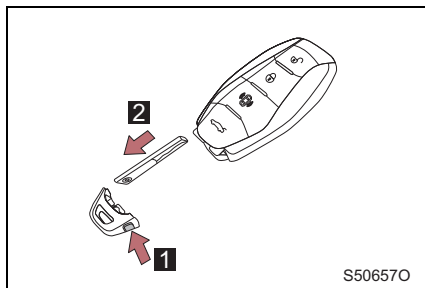
When vehicle is in anti-theft mode and engine stops, press and hold remote start button within 1.5 seconds after pressing the lock button on the remote controller in effective range to start engine remotely; After remote starting, continuously press the remote start button twice within 1.5 seconds to stop the engine.

### 4 Trunk lid opening/closing button

Press and hold the button to open/close the trunk lid.



## Using mechanical key



**1** Press the unlock button to detach the key end cover

**2** Taking out the mechanical key  
After using the mechanical key, store it in the smart key. Always carry the mechanical key with the smart key. If the smart key battery runs out and does not work properly, use the mechanical key. (See P.324)

3

Getting on/off the car

### ■ When you need parking service

Be sure to keep the mechanical key with you, and only give the smart key to the parking service personnel.

### ■ Key number plate

Please keep the key number plate in a safe place and keep it properly.

### ■ When traveling by air

When flying with the smart key, make sure that you don't press any button on the smart key while in the cabin. If the key is placed in the bag, make sure that no buttons on the key are accidentally pressed. Pressing any button may cause the key to emit radio waves, thus interfering with the flight of the aircraft.

### ■ Key battery power

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- Even if the key is not in use, the battery may be depleted. The following symptoms indicate that the key battery is low or may be exhausted. Replace the battery if necessary. (See P.379)
  - The PEPS system or wireless remote control function does not work.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The instrument cluster displays that the key battery is low.
- To avoid serious degradation of key performance, do not place it within 1 m of the following electrical equipment that can generate magnetic field:
  - TV set
  - Personal computer
  - Mobile phone, cordless phone and battery charger
  - Mobile phone or cordless phone being charged
  - Table lamp
  - Induction cooker

### ■ Replacing battery

(See P.379)



#### CAUTION

##### ■ Prevent damage to the key

- Do not subject the key to violent impact or expose it to high temperature (such as direct sunlight) and humid environment.
- Do not wet the key or clean it in ultrasonic cleaner.
- Do not immerse the key in water.
- Do not attach metal or magnetic materials to the key, or place the key near such materials.
- Do not disassemble the smart key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the key surface.
- Do not place the key near objects that can generate magnetic fields, such as television, sound system, induction cooker or electronic medical equipment (such as low-frequency medical equipment).

##### ■ Carry the smart key with you

When carrying the key with you, keep it 10 cm or more away from the electrical equipment that are turned on. Radio waves emitted by electrical equipment within 10 cm from the key may interfere with the key, causing it to fail to work normally.

##### ■ When the PEPS system fails or there is other failure related to the key

Please send the vehicle to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer with all the keys of the vehicle.

##### ■ When the key is lost

If the key is lost, the risk of vehicle theft will obviously increase. Please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer with all the keys of the vehicle for re-matching.

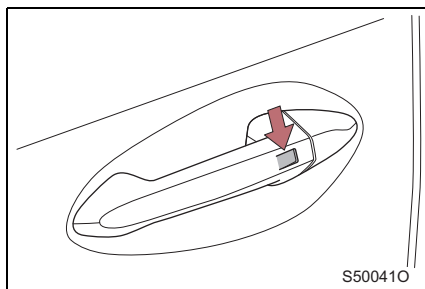
## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid

### Door

#### Unlocking/locking doors from outside

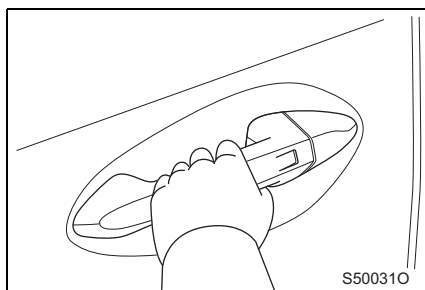
##### ■ PEPS

As long as you carry the smart key with you, the door can be unlocked and locked through PEPS function.



Turn off the engine switch and touch the door handle locking area on the driver's side or the front passenger's side to lock the door.

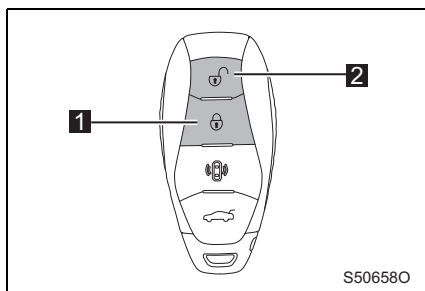
When any door is not closed, it is impossible to lock the door by touching the door handle locking area.



Hold the door handle on the driver's side or the front passenger's side to unlock the door.

When touching the door handle locking area to lock the door, the door cannot be intelligently unlocked within 4 s after locking, but the remote unlocking function is not limited.

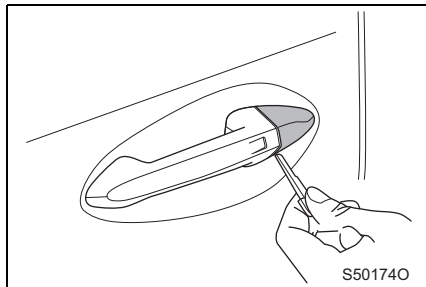
##### ■ Wireless remote control



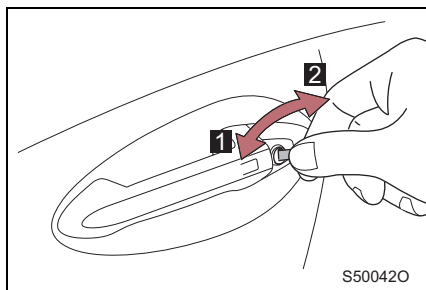
**1** Locking the door

**2** Unlocking the door

### ■ Mechanical key



Use the mechanical key to remove the door keyhole cover.



Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors.

❶ Locking the door

❷ Unlocking the door

---

### ■ Operating signal

All turn signals flash to indicate that the doors are locked/unlocked. (Lock: flash once; Unlock: flash twice)

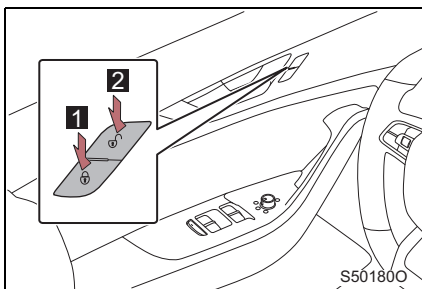
### ■ The key battery runs out of power

If the key battery runs out of power, replace the battery with a new one. (See P.379)

## Unlocking/locking doors from inside

The doors can be unlocked and locked by the central locking switch on the driver's door.

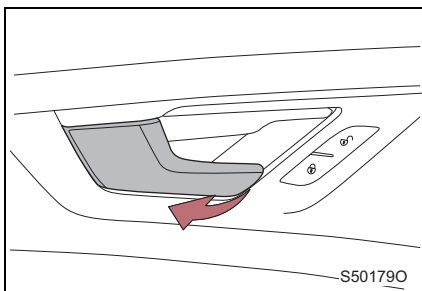
### ■ Central locking switch



- 1** Locking all doors
- 2** Unlocking all doors

Note: When a door is not closed, the central locking switch can only unlock the doors.

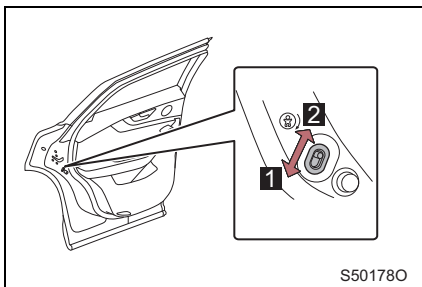
### ■ Door inside handle



Pull the door inside handle to open the door.

After the door is locked, pull the inside handle once to unlock the door and pull it again to open the door.

## Rear door child safety lock



After the safety lock is set, the doors cannot be opened from inside.

- 1** Locking
- 2** Unlocking

Set the safety lock to prevent children from opening the rear doors from inside.

### ■ Speed sensing door lock function

When all doors are closed with any door unlocked, if the vehicle is operating and vehicle speed exceeds approx. 20 km/h, the speed sensing door lock will be activated to lock the door.

### ■ Conditions affecting PEPS system or wireless remote control

(See P.94)



## WARNING

### ■ Prevent accidents

Please observe the following precautions when driving.

Otherwise, occupants may be thrown out of the vehicle due to the accidental opening of the door, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Be sure to fasten the seat belt properly.
- Ensure that all doors are closed correctly.
- Be sure to lock all doors.
- Do not pull the door inside handle while driving.

Otherwise, occupants may be thrown out of the vehicle due to opening of the door, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- If there are children in the rear seat, please set the rear door child safety lock.
- When leaving the vehicle and there is no one in the vehicle, please take the key with you, close all windows and sunroof and lock all doors to prevent others from entering or stealing the vehicle.
- Never leave children unattended in the car.
- Do not allow children to carry or use the key, as children may cause a safety hazard by starting the car or operating the shift lever.
- Do not allow children to play with windows or other equipment as they may get injured.
- Make sure that the temperature inside the vehicle is appropriate, because too high or too low temperature will cause fatal injury to children.
- Make sure that the surrounding area of the vehicle is safe when opening the door.

It is very dangerous to open the door suddenly, which may hit other vehicles or pedestrians and cause accidents.

- After closing the door, make sure it is closed tightly.

It is very dangerous to leave the door ajar, because the door may open accidentally during driving, which may cause an accident.

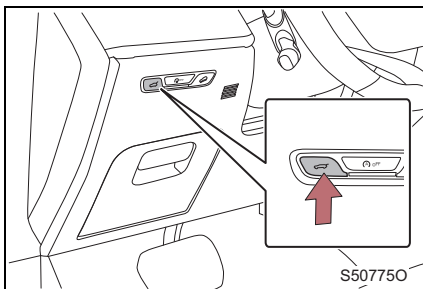
## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid

### Trunk lid

The trunk lid can be opened using the trunk lid unlocking button or wireless remote control.

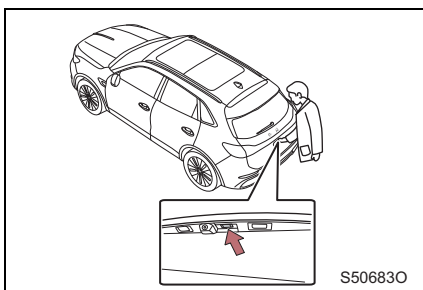
#### Opening trunk lid

##### ■ Opening trunk lid from inside



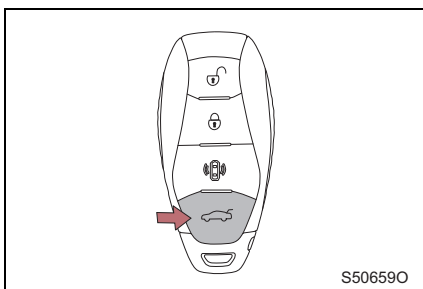
When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is closed, press the trunk lid interior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

##### ■ Opening trunk lid from outside



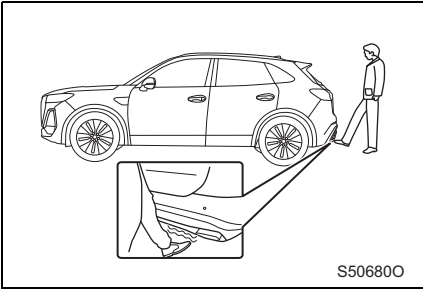
When the vehicle is locked and engine switch is turned to IG-OFF mode, carry the smart key with you, and press the trunk lid exterior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid; When the vehicle is unlocked, press the trunk lid exterior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

##### ■ Wireless remote control



With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the trunk lid closed, press and hold the trunk lid opening/closing button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

■ Sticking sensing on\*



When the vehicle is stationary, carry the smart key with you and make a sticking motion under the rear bumper to unlock and open the trunk lid.

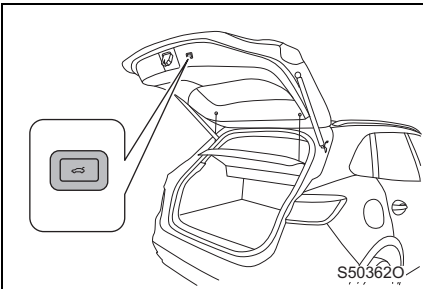
Closing trunk lid

■ Closing trunk lid from inside\*

When the trunk lid is open, press and hold the trunk lid interior unlocking button to close the trunk lid.

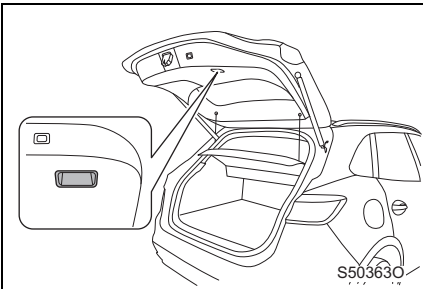
■ Closing trunk lid from outside

▶ Trunk lid switch\*



Press the trunk lid closing button, the trunk lid will automatically close.

▶ Trunk lid handle



Use the trunk lid handle to lower the trunk lid, then press the trunk lid down from the outside of the car to close it.



- **Wireless remote control\***

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the trunk lid opened, press and hold the trunk lid opening/closing button to close the trunk lid.

- **Sticking sensing off\***

When the trunk lid is open, carry the smart key with you, make a sticking motion under the rear bumper to close the trunk lid.

---

- **Trunk lamp**

When the trunk lid is opened, the trunk lamp will come on.

- **Trunk lid position memory\***

Open the trunk lid, adjust the trunk lid to an appropriate angle (50% - 95% of maximum angle), press and hold the trunk lid closing button for more than 3 s, then all turn signal lamps will flash once and the current position will be memorized as the opening position of trunk.

- **Key in trunk reminder**

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the vehicle locked, when the trunk lid is opened and closed separately from outside, if the smart key is left in the trunk or in the vehicle, the key in trunk reminder will be triggered (the trunk lid will be automatically opened).



### **WARNING**

- **When opening and closing the trunk lid, be careful to avoid being caught by the trunk lid.**

- **Before driving**

- Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. Otherwise, the trunk lid may open accidentally and knock into the objects nearby, or the objects in the trunk may be thrown out during driving, causing an accident.
- Prevent the children from playing in the trunk. Otherwise, they may be locked in the trunk by accident and suffer from heatstroke, suffocation or other injuries thereafter.
- Prevent the children from opening or closing the trunk lid. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to open by accident or cause the closing trunk lid to pinch the child's hands, head or neck.

- **Precautions when driving**

Be sure to keep the trunk lid closed to prevent objects from being thrown out and prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

- **When children are in or around the vehicle**

Prevent children from playing in and around an unattended vehicle, especially when the trunk lid has been opened, because children may enter and be trapped in the trunk. If the temperature in the vehicle is too high or too low at this time, serious injury or death may occur.

- **Important when driving**

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. Otherwise they are susceptible to serious injury or even death in the event of emergency braking or collision.

- **Anti-pinch function\***

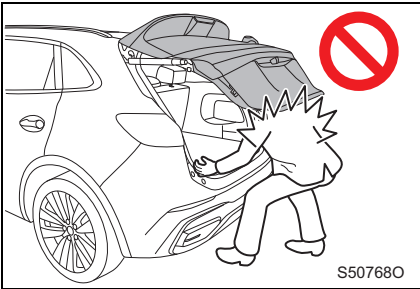
Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving window with any part of your body.

## WARNING

### ■ Using trunk

Please observe the following precautions. Otherwise a body part may be pinched, causing serious injury.

- Before opening the trunk lid, remove the heavy load on the trunk lid, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, it may cause the trunk lid to suddenly close again after being opened.
- Before opening or closing the trunk lid, please thoroughly check the surrounding area for the sake of safety.
- If anyone is nearby, ensure their safety and inform them that the trunk lid is about to open or close.
- Care should be taken when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather, because the trunk lid may suddenly move in strong winds.
- Do not install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra load on the trunk lid may cause the trunk lid to suddenly close again after being opened.

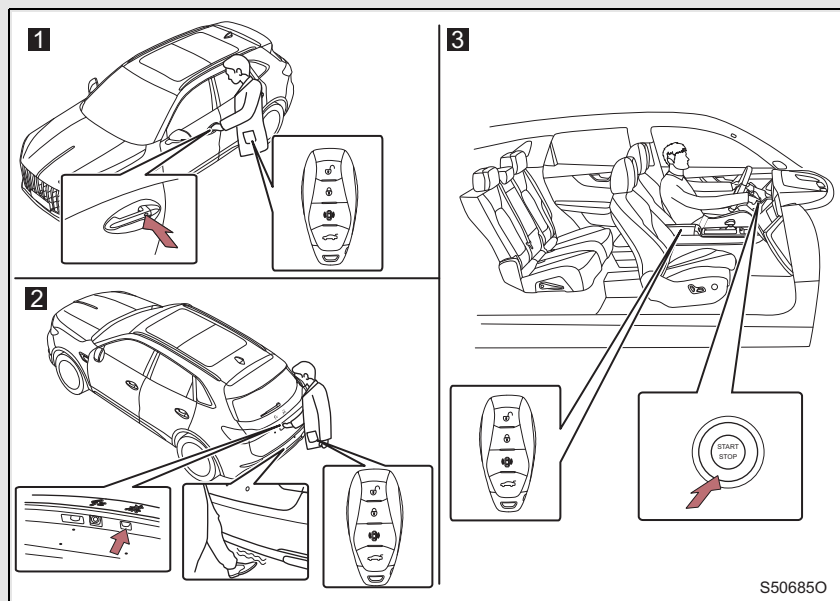


- It is much more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on a slope than on a level road, so beware of accidental closure of the trunk lid during opening or accidental opening during closing. Before using the trunk, make sure that the trunk lid is fully opened and secured.

- When closing the trunk lid, special care should be taken to avoid pinching fingers and other parts.
- Do not touch the trunk lid during the electric operation (opening/closing) process of trunk lid, to prevent personnel injury or damage to the trunk lid.
- If the automatic opening or closing process of the trunk lid is affected by poor movement or obstacles, the opening or closing process will be interrupted automatically:
  - Check if there are obstacles in the opening or closing path of trunk lid;
  - The trunk lid can be continued to open or close manually if necessary. Greater force is required for this purpose, and force must be applied slowly; Do not operate the trunk lid violently at this time to prevent damage to the trunk lid from excessive impact.

## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid PEPS

As long as you carry the smart key with you, for example, in your pocket, you can do the followings. (The driver must carry the key with him)

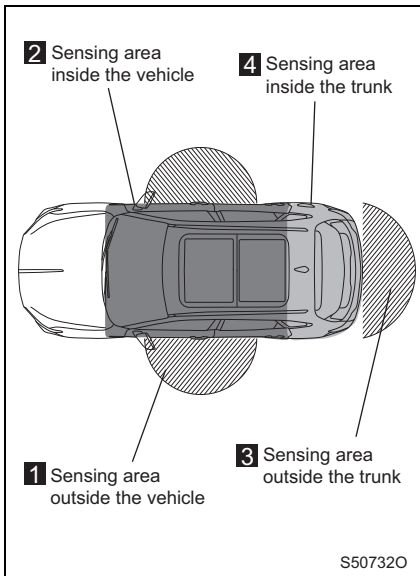


**1** Door locking/unlocking. (See P.83)

**2** Trunk lid unlocking. (See P.87)

**3** Engine start. (See P.190)

### ■ Effective range (the area where the key can be detected)



Effective range of key sensing antenna:

A hemispherical area centered on the sensing antenna.

#### 1 When locking or unlocking the door

When the key is in the sensing area outside the vehicle, you can lock or unlock the door.

#### 2 When starting the engine or switching the mode of engine switch

If the key is in the sensing area inside the vehicle, you can start the engine or switch the mode of engine switch.

#### 3 When unlocking the trunk lid

When the smart key is in the sensing area outside the trunk, if the conditions are met, you can unlock the trunk lid.

#### 4 When the key is left in the trunk

If you close the trunk lid when the key is in the sensing area inside the trunk or vehicle, and the conditions are met, the key in trunk reminder will be activated. (See P.89)

### ■ Warning and prompt function

The system warning and prompt function is realized through the instrument cluster, warning buzzer, hazard warning lamp and engine switch status indicator lamp.

#### ● When any warning lamp comes on

Take corresponding measures depending on the lit warning lamp. (See P.61)

#### ● When an warning message is displayed

Take corresponding measures depending on the warning message displayed by the cluster instrument.

### ■ Conditions affecting operations

The radio waves used in the PEPS system are weak. The communication between the key and the vehicle may be affected in the following circumstances, which may prevent the PEPS system and the wireless remote control from working properly.

- When the key battery is low.
- When the key battery is depleted
- When the user is close to a TV tower, power plant, gas station, radio station, large monitor, airport or other facilities that produce strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When the user carries a portable radio, mobile phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.
- When the key comes into contact with or is covered by a metal object.
- When multiple smart keys are near the vehicle at the same time.
- When the user carries or uses the key with the following device that emit radio waves.
  - Smart key of any other vehicle
  - Wireless remote control key for transmitting radio waves
  - Personal computer
- When the sunshade film with metal composition or any metal material is adhered to the rear windshield.
- When the following metal objects touch or cover the key.
  - A card with aluminum foil
  - Cigarette case with aluminum foil attached inside
  - A wallet or bag made of metal
  - Coins
  - Metal hand warmer
  - Media such as CD and DVD
- There are other wireless remote control keys (transmitting radio waves) near the vehicle when they are in use.
- When the key is near the battery charger or electronic device.

### ■ Operating system properly

- Remember to carry the key with you when operating the system. When operating outside the vehicle, do not make the key too close to the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific location of the key and the holding method, the key signal may not be detected, resulting in the system cannot work properly.

### ■ Safety function

- When using remote unlocking or intelligent unlocking, if the door or trunk lid is not opened, the vehicle will be automatically locked after a period of time.

### ■ When parking for a long time

- To prevent the vehicle from being stolen, do not place the key too close to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be depleted.

### ■ If the PEPS system does not work properly

- Lock and unlock the door: Use the mechanical key. (See P.324)
- Engine start. (See P.324)

### ■ Comments on PEPS

- Under the following circumstances, the system may not work properly even if the key is within the effective range (sensing area).
  - When locking or unlocking the door, the key is too close to the window or door handle, too close to the ground or too high.
- As long as the smart key is within the effective range, anyone can lock or unlock the door. Please keep the key properly.
- The PEPS may fail if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle (such as during vehicle washing or heavy rain).
- The door may not be locked under the following circumstances.
  - When the smart key is still in the vehicle and the door is locked with the intelligent locking function.
  - When the engine switch is not turned off, and you get off with the key and lock the door.
  - When any door is not completely closed.
  - When the shift lever is not in P/N position.



### **WARNING**

#### **■ Precautions for interference with electronic devices**

People who use implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep an appropriate distance from the antenna of the PEPS system.

- Radio waves may affect the normal operation of such devices. For details of radio wave frequency and radio wave transmission time, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. Then ask your doctor if you can use them normally.
- People who use other electronic medical devices instead of implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the device manufacturer about the impact of radio waves on the operation of the devices.
- Radio waves may have an unpredictable impact on the use of such medical devices.
- For details of PEPS, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



## Goods and luggage

**Please pay attention to the followings when storing goods and luggage.**

- Store goods and luggage in the trunk as much as possible.
- Ensure that all articles are firmly fixed.
- Keep the vehicle level. Put the weight forward as far as possible to keep the vehicle balanced.
- In order to improve the driving range, please do not carry unnecessary heavy objects.

**WARNING****■ Articles prohibited from being stored in the trunk**

The following articles may cause fire when placed in the trunk.

- A container with gasoline.
- Aerosol can.
- Other inflammable and explosive articles.

**■ Precautions for storage**

To avoid serious personal injury or even death, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not place goods or luggage in the following places. Otherwise, the articles may jam the brake pedal or accelerator pedal which may not work properly, and may block the driver's sight or hit the driver or passengers, thus causing accidents.
  - Driver's footwell
  - Front passenger's seat or rear seat (with articles)
  - Instrument panel
- Store all the articles properly in the vehicle. Otherwise, the articles may move and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- It is forbidden to store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

**■ Load and distribution**

- Please do not overload the vehicle.
- Be sure to place the goods evenly.

Improper placement may lead to poor steering or braking control performance, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
- Do not put heavy objects in the trunk for a long time.

Placing heavy objects in the trunk for a long time may affect the performance of the suspension system.

## 4-1. Seats

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| Front seat .....                            | 100 |
| Rear seat .....                             | 102 |
| Headrest .....                              | 105 |
| Seat memory* .....                          | 107 |
| Seat ventilation and heating function* .... | 109 |

## 4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Steering wheel .....           | 111 |
| Interior rearview mirror ..... | 113 |
| Exterior rearview mirror ..... | 115 |

## 4-3. Windows and sunroof

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| Power window .....   | 118 |
| Panorama sunroof* .. | 121 |

## 4-4. A/C system

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Automatic A/C system ..... | 124 |
| Windshield heating ..      | 134 |

## 4-5. Interior power supply

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| On-board wireless charging* ..... | 135 |
| USB power outlet .....            | 137 |
| 12 V backup power ..              | 139 |

## 4-6. Interior lamp

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Using interior lamp ... | 141 |
|-------------------------|-----|

## 4-7. Storage compartments

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Using storage compartments ..... | 144 |
|----------------------------------|-----|

## 4-8. Other equipment

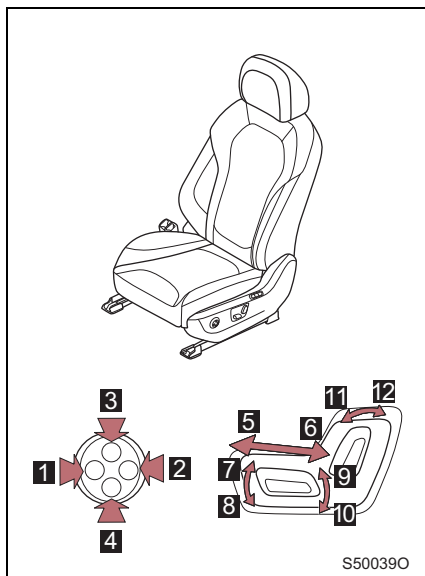
|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Using other equipment ..... | 150 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

## 4-1. Seats

### Front seat

#### Adjustment steps

► Power seat\* (taking the driver's seat for example)



- 1** Protruding lumbar support\*
- 2** Depressing lumbar support\*
- 3** Moving lumbar support upward\*
- 4** Moving lumbar support downward\*
- 5** Moving seat forward
- 6** Moving seat backward
- 7** Lifting front end of seat (for driver's seat only)
- 8** Lowering front end of seat (for driver's seat only)
- 9** Lifting seat (for driver's seat only)
- 10** Lowering seat (for driver's seat only)
- 11** Tilting seat back forward
- 12** Tilting seat back backward



## WARNING

### ■ Seat adjustment

- Do not tilt the seat excessively during driving, so as to prevent your body from slipping out of the lap belt. If the seat is tilted excessively, the lap belt may slide over the hips and strangle the abdomen or allow the shoulder belt to reach the neck, increasing the risk of serious injury or even death in the event of an accident.
- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts, as the seat mechanism may pinch your hands.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured when the seat moves.
- Do not allow the children to adjust the seat.  
It is very dangerous to allow children to adjust the seat. If a child's hand or foot is caught, serious injury could occur.
- Always park the car before adjusting the driver's seat.  
Adjusting the driver's seat during driving is very dangerous, because the driver may lose control of the car, which could lead to an accident.

### ■ Seat modification

- Modifying or replacing the front seats may damage the airbag components in the seats and cause failure of the airbags to deploy properly in the event of a crash.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### ■ If the seat is damaged

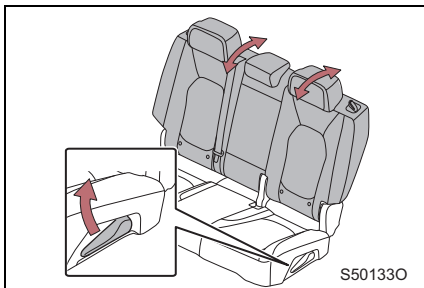
- If the seat has been damaged, it is very dangerous to drive the car at this time.
- After a collision, even if the seat airbag does not deploy, the seat may be damaged. Therefore, after a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the seats, seat belt pretensioners and airbags.

## 4-1. Seats

### Rear seat

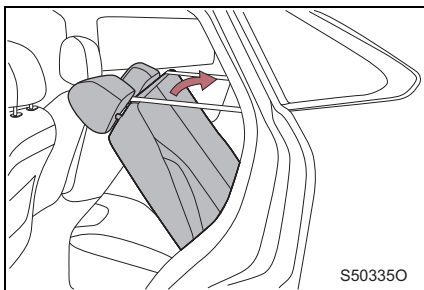
**The rear seat back is folding.**

#### Rear seat back angle adjusting and folding



Pull the release handles on the left and right sides of rear seat to adjust the angle of seat back and fold it.

#### Resetting the seat back to the upright position



Reset the seat back to the upright position until a "click" is heard, and then gently shake the seat back back and forth to ensure it is securely locked.

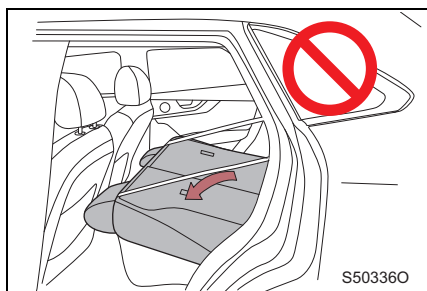
Check that all seat belts are properly secured for use.

## ⚠ WARNING

### ■ Precautions during rear seat back folding

Please observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or even death.

- Do not fold the seat backs while driving.
- Park the car on a level ground, set the shift lever to P position, and apply the parking brake.
- When folding the rear seat backs, be careful not to pinch your hands.
- Before folding the rear seat backs, adjust the position of the front seats so that the front seats do not interfere with the rear seat backs during folding of the rear seat backs.



- Before reclining the rear seat backs, be sure to release the rear seat belt buckles and retract the belts of both outboard rear seats to both sides of the seats; otherwise the seat belts, buckles and seat backs may be damaged.

### ■ Precautions after rear seat back folding

- Do not allow anyone to sit on the folded seat back or in the trunk while driving.
- Do not allow a child to enter the trunk.

It is very dangerous for children to play in the vehicle with the seat back folded down. If a child enters the trunk and the seat back is folded back, the child could be trapped in the trunk, leading to an accident.

- Securely fix items in the trunk.

It is very dangerous to drive without securely fixing items and luggage, because they may move and interfere with driving in case of emergency braking or accidental collision.



### WARNING

#### ■ **Precautions after resetting the seat back to the upright position**

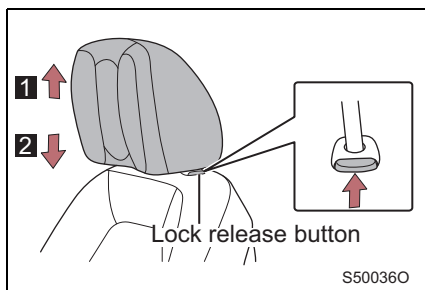
Please observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or even death.

- Gently shake the seat back slightly back and forth to make sure it is securely locked in place.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or stuck under the seats.



## 4-1. Seats

# Headrest



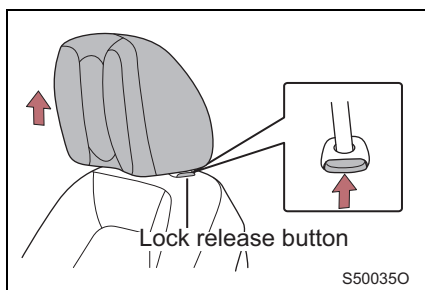
### 1 Moving up

Pull up the headrest while pressing and holding the lock release button.

### 2 Moving down

Push down the headrest while pressing and holding the lock release button.

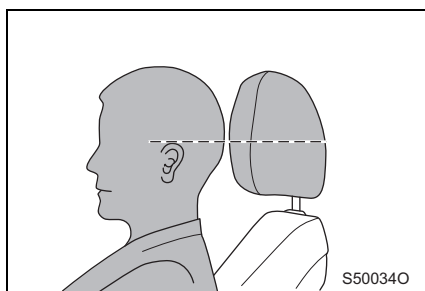
### ■ Removing headrest



Pull up the headrest while pressing the lock release button.

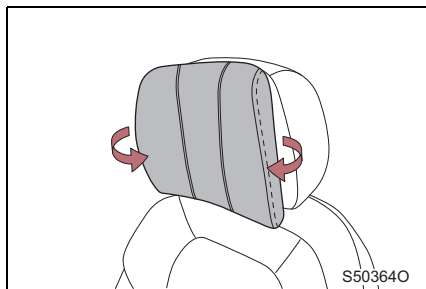
If the ceiling interferes with the removal of the headrest, you can tilt the seat back angle to remove the headrest.

### ■ Adjusting headrest height



Adjust the headrest so that the center of the headrest is flush with the upper end of ears.

### ■ Sleeping headrest\*



The two wings of headrest can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

To ensure the durability of headrest wing, please operate the headrest wing properly: Grasp the middle of the side on two wings of headrest, and slowly adjust the wings to a comfortable position with even force.

Violent operation of the headrest wing may result in damage to the headrest.



### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Precautions for headrest**

Please observe the following precautions for headrest. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

- Use the headrests specifically designed for the seats.
- Be sure to adjust the headrest to the appropriate position for use.
- Do not drive the car with the headrest removed.

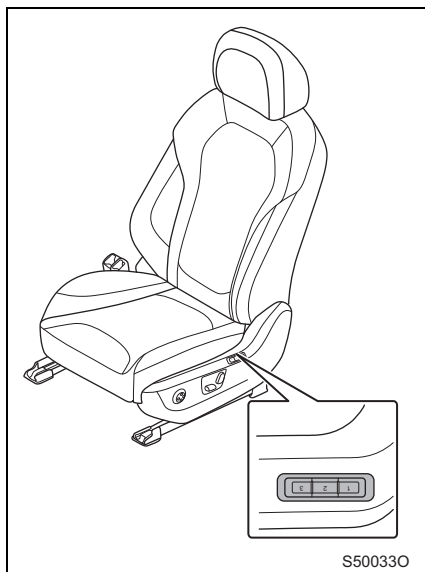
Whenever you drive the car, install the headrest and adjust it to the proper position. It is very dangerous to drive the car with the headrest in a low position or uninstalled. In the event of a collision, the lack of head support could cause serious neck injuries.

- **Headrests can reduce the whiplash effect and mitigate the neck injury of the occupants in case of rear impact.**

## Seat memory\*

The seat, steering wheel (for some models), exterior rearview mirror position and key information can be memorized at the same time.

### Seat memory setting



To set the memory content: After adjusting the position of the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror, press and hold any memory button (for more than 3 s). Release the button after hearing the instrument cluster prompt tone, and the position information and current key information will be memorized in that button.

To recall the memory content: Press the memory button to allow the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror to be automatically adjusted to the memorized position set by the button.

Each key corresponds to three groups of memory locations.

### Initialization setting

Set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, press the buttons 1 and 3 simultaneously to perform initialization setting. The warning buzzer will sound once, indicating that the initialization is successful.

### Welcome function

The welcome function includes automatic backing and automatic return.

**Automatic backing:** Turn off the engine switch, and open the left front door. Then the seat and steering wheel automatically moves backward to the maximum travel position, facilitating the driver to get off the vehicle.

**Automatic return:** Turn on the engine switch. Then the seat and steering wheel automatically returns to the position before the driver left the vehicle.

---

#### ■ Welcome function switch

The welcome function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.165)

#### ■ During automatic backing

During the automatic backing, the driver can operate the steering wheel adjusting switch, seat adjusting switch or seat memory button to terminate the steering wheel and/or seat backing.

#### ■ During automatic return

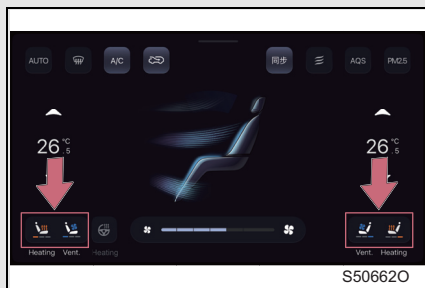
During the automatic return, the driver can operate the steering wheel adjusting switch, seat adjusting switch or seat memory button to terminate the steering wheel and/or seat return.

## 4-1. Seats

# Seat ventilation and heating function\*

**Ventilation and heating function can be controlled separately.**

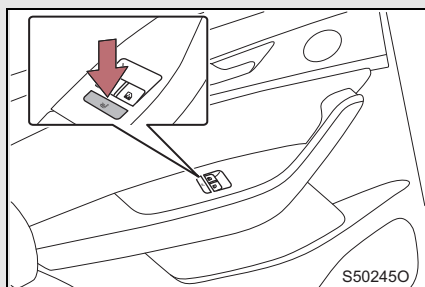
### ■ Front seat ventilation and heating setting



Touch the seat heating and ventilation button on the A/C setting interface of multimedia display to select appropriate heating and ventilation level.

Levels 1-3 are selectable.

### ■ Rear seat heating setting



Touch the seat heating button, the indicator lamp will illuminate and the rear seat heating function will be activated; touch the button again, the rear sea heating function will be deactivated.

### ■ Operating conditions

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.



### WARNING

■ **Be sure to observe the following precautions when using seat heating or ventilation function**

- Use caution when following persons are seating on the heated seat to avoid burns:
  - Infants, children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are very fatigued
  - Persons who are drowsy because of taking alcohol or drugs (sleeping pills, cold medicine, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with any object (e.g. blanket, seat cushion) when using seat heating or ventilation. Otherwise, the seat temperature will increase or decrease, which leads to overheating or overcooling.
- Do not turn on the seat heating or ventilation function unless necessary. Otherwise, passengers may feel overcooled, overheated or suffer from local burns.



### CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to seat heating or ventilation system**

Do not place heavy objects with uneven surfaces on the seats, or stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) in the seats.

■ **When cleaning seats**

Do not clean the seats with organic substances such as benzene, gasoline, etc. Otherwise, the heater and seat upholstery are liable to be damaged.

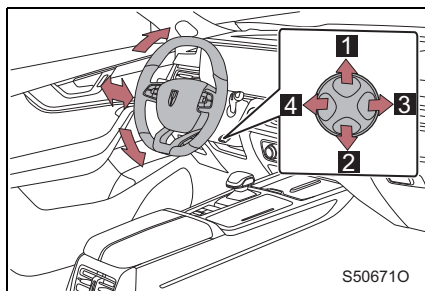
## 4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror

# Steering wheel

### Steering wheel adjustment

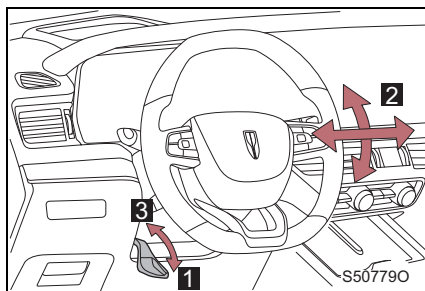
**The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.**

#### ■ Electrical adjustment\*



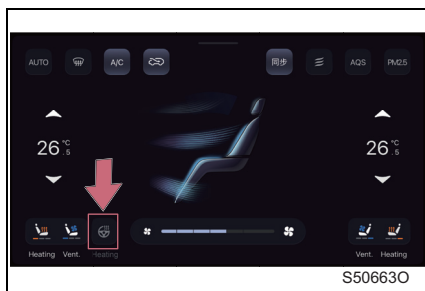
- 1** Move upward
- 2** Move downward
- 3** Move forward
- 4** Move backward

#### ■ Mechanical adjustment\*



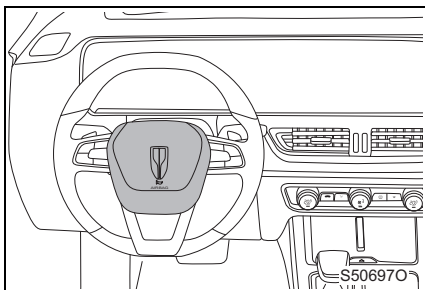
- 1** Release the steering wheel adjusting handle.
- 2** Adjust the steering wheel to a comfortable position.
- 3** Lock the steering wheel adjusting handle.

### Steering wheel heating\*



Touch the steering wheel heating button on the A/C setting interface of multimedia display, the button will be illuminated and the steering wheel heating function will be activated, touch the button again, the steering wheel heating function will be deactivated.

### Horn



Press the horn symbol or the surrounding area to sound the horn.

### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions when driving

- Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this may cause the driver to make a mistake and cause an accident, which could result in serious injury or even death.
- During driving, the driver's hands should hold the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions. Do not hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or in any other position, as this may result in injury to the driver's arms or head when the driver's airbag deploys.

#### ■ When adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel should be adjusted so that the driver's chest is at least 300 mm away from the steering wheel. Do not make the steering wheel directly face the driver's face; otherwise the driver's airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

#### ■ After adjusting the steering wheel mechanically

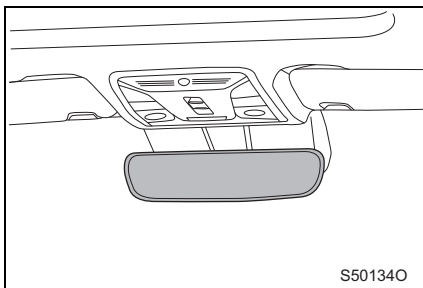
Ensure that the steering wheel is firmly locked, otherwise it may cause an accident due to sudden movement of the steering wheel, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.



## 4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror

### Interior rearview mirror

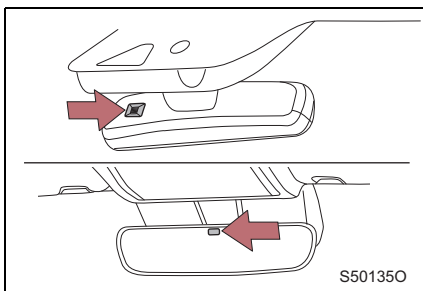
#### Adjusting interior rearview mirror



The interior rearview mirror can be adjusted up, down, left or right depending on the driving posture.

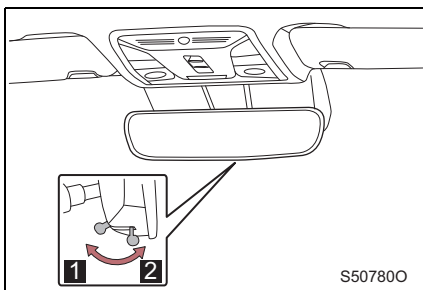
The driver must adjust the interior rearview mirror to a proper position, in order to view the rear of the car through the rear windshield.

#### Anti-glare function



Interior rearview mirror has automatic anti-glare function, which uses the front and rear sensors to detect the light intensity of vehicles behind and reduce the reflected light automatically.

#### Stream media interior rearview mirror\*



**1** Turn off

**2** Turn on

Stream media interior rearview mirror can display the image collected by rearview camera through the interior rearview mirror, allowing the view to be unaffected by factors such as the rear windshield and rear passengers.

The automatic anti-glare function is available when it is turned off.

### ■ Stream media interior rearview mirror basic setting

The display height and display brightness can be set in the display settings of in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.165)



### **WARNING**

#### ■ **During driving**

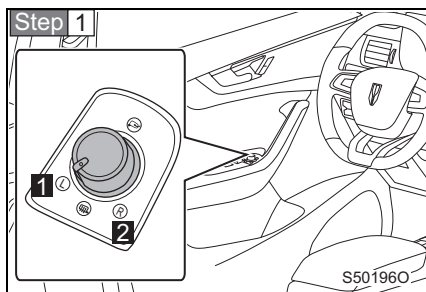
- Do not adjust the position of the rearview mirror while driving, as this may result in an accident due to mishandling, which could lead to serious injury or even death.
- Stacking items in the rear seats beyond the seat back height will obstruct the sight in the rearview mirror, which could result in a traffic accident. Therefore, do not stack items beyond the seat back height.

## 4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror

### Exterior rearview mirror

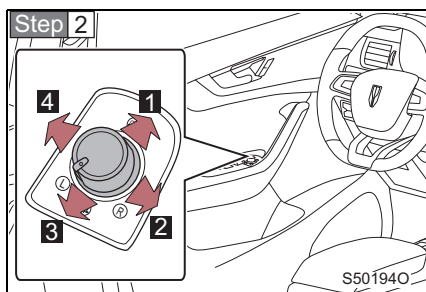
#### Adjusting exterior rearview mirror

When the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode, the angle of exterior rearview mirror can be adjusted.



Select the rearview mirror to be adjusted by turning the adjustment knob.

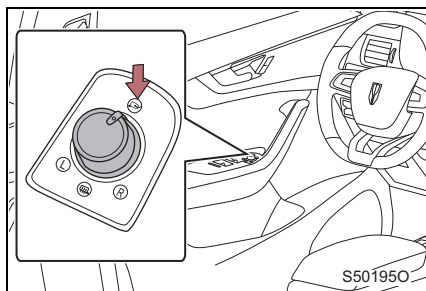
- 1 Left
- 2 Right



Adjustment the rearview mirror.

- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move rightward
- 3 Move downward
- 4 Move leftward

#### Folding exterior rearview mirror

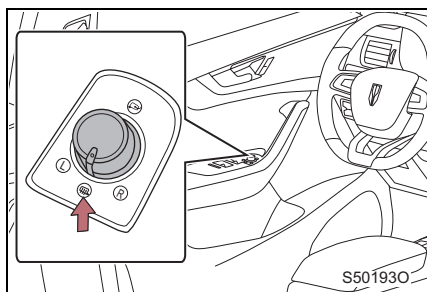


As shown in the figure, turn the adjustment knob to the folding position of exterior rearview mirror to fold the exterior rearview mirror, turn the adjustment knob to other position to return it to its original position.

The exterior rearview mirror will automatically fold when the car is locked, and automatically unfold when the car is unlocked. The automatic folding function of

exterior rearview mirrors can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.165)

### Exterior rearview mirror heating



When the rearview mirrors are fogged up, turn the adjustment knob to exterior rearview mirror heating mark to heat the exterior rearview mirror.

#### ■ Operating conditions of exterior rearview mirror angle adjustment function

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the parking brake is applied.

#### ■ Operating conditions of exterior rearview mirror folding switch and heating switch

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

#### ■ Using power mode in cold weather

In cold weather where the exterior rearview mirrors may freeze, the automatic folding and unfolding feature may not function in power mode. In this case, remove the snow and ice from the exterior rearview mirrors, and then operate the mirrors manually.

#### ■ Exterior rearview mirror memory

The exterior rearview mirrors feature a memory function that can be linked with the seat memory. (See P.107)

#### ■ Automatic adjustment of right rearview mirror

In R position, the driver can adjust the right rearview mirror to an appropriate angle, which is memorized as the target flip-down position.

This function is enabled when the exterior rearview mirror adjustment knob is placed in the right adjustment position. The right rearview mirror flips down to provide the driver with reverse view when shifted to R. The rearview mirror returns to its previous position when shifted out of R.

**WARNING**

■ **When driving**

Please observe the following precautions while driving. Failure to do so may result in loss control of the car and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Always look around before changing lanes.

It is dangerous to change lanes without considering the actual distance of the vehicle in the exterior rearview mirror. Since the actual distance of the object is closer than what you see in the exterior rearview mirrors, it can lead to a serious accident.

- Do not drive with the exterior rearview mirror folded. Be sure to reset the exterior rearview mirrors to the unfolding position before driving.

■ **When adjusting the exterior mirror**

To avoid personal injury and rearview mirror fault, be careful not to have your hands pinched by the mirror in motion.

■ **When operating the exterior rearview mirror heater**

- Do not touch the surface of the exterior rearview mirror, as it will become hot and may cause burns.
- When heating is not required, turn the rearview mirror adjustment knob to the "L" or "R" position.

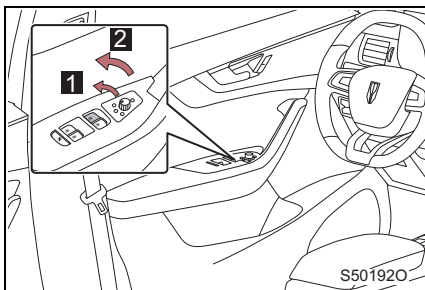
■ **Precautions when driving**

Please observe the following precautions while driving:

- Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving.
- Both left and right rearview mirrors must be unfolded and properly adjusted before driving.

# Power window

### Opening and closing power windows



#### 1 Manual lifting/lowering

Pull up/press down the corresponding window regulator switch to position 1 (keep pulling up/pressing down), to achieve manual lifting/lowering of the windows.

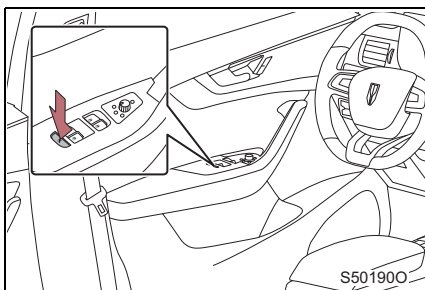
#### 2 Automatic lifting/lowering

Pull up/press down the corresponding window regulator switch to position 2 (pull up/press down and release), to achieve automatic lifting/lowering of the windows.

The driver's power window switch can control other windows

Rear passenger's power window switch can control rear windows on both sides.

### Power window lock switch



When this switch is pressed, the rear passenger's power window switch will be disabled.

The driver's power window switch and the front passenger's power window switch are not controlled by the locking switch.

### ■ Operating conditions of power windows

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

### ■ Operate the power windows with engine switch turned off

The power windows can be operated even after the engine switch is turned off for a period of time.

### ■ Initialization operation

After the automatic window lifting/lowering function is disabled, the windows need to be initialized as follows:

- With the window glass in any position (beyond 4 mm from the top of the window frame) in the operating range of the anti-pinch function, pull up the switch for the window to be initialized to close the window fully, and keep the action for about 2 s or more, to complete the initialization operation.

If necessary, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### ■ Anti-pinch function

In case of an obstacle during the automatic closing, the power window can automatically return to a safe position.

### ■ Automatic window closing function\*

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the window not closed, the window will be automatically closed after the rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

The automatic window closing function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 163)

### ■ Remote window lifting

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key in the operating range to close all windows.

### ■ Intelligent window lifting

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, carry the smart key with you and press and hold the door handle lock sensing area to close all windows.



## WARNING

■ **To avoid serious personal injury or even death, observe the following precautions when closing the windows:**

- During operation on the windows, do check carefully to ensure that no part of the driver and passenger's bodies will be pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

■ **Anti-pinch function**

- Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving window with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is pinched when the window is about to close fully (4 mm).
- If the automatic window lifting/lowering function or the anti-pinch function is disabled, initialization is required.

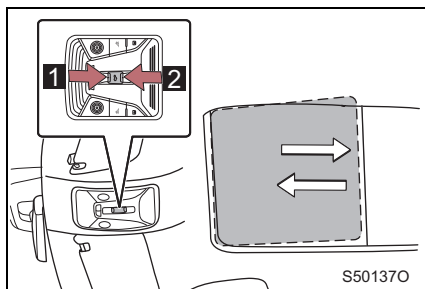


## 4-3. Windows and sunroof

### Panorama sunroof\*

The sunroof can be opened and closed by the sunroof switch.

#### Opening and closing sunroof



##### 1 Opening

When the sunroof is closed, press the switch backwards once to tilt the rear of the sunroof up and partially open the sunshade. When the sunroof is in the upward tilting position, press the switch backward once to open the sunroof and sunshade simultaneously.

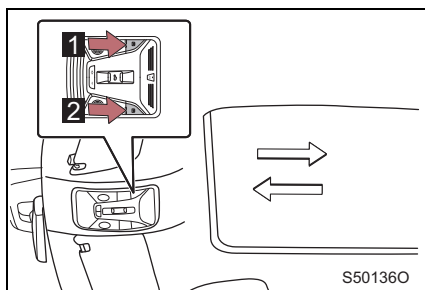
##### 2 Closing

When the sunroof is open, press the switch forward once to close the sunroof.

Note: When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, press the sunroof switch again to stop the sunroof.

Press and hold the sunroof switch to open and close the sunroof manually, and release the switch to stop the sunroof.

#### Opening and closing sunshade



##### 1 Opening

Press the sunshade opening button once to open the sunshade fully.

##### 2 Closing

Press the sunshade closing button once to close the sunshade fully.

Note: When the sunshade is opening or closing automatically, press the sunshade button again to stop the sunshade.

Press and hold the sunshade button to open and close the sunshade manually, and release the button to stop the sunshade.

---

### ■ Operating conditions of sunroof

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

### ■ Operate the sunroof with engine switch turned off

Within a certain period of time after the engine switch is turned off, if the driver's door is not open, the sunroof can still be operated at this time.

### ■ When the sunroof is not closed, the sunshade cannot be fully closed.

### ■ Initialization operation

#### ● Sunroof initialization operation

When the sunroof is positioned incorrectly, the automatic sunroof function is disabled or the sunroof and sunshade linkage function is disabled, initialization should be done as follows: Set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, and run the sunroof to the fully closed position. At this time, press and hold the sunroof switch forward. When the sunroof hits the mechanism stop, release the switch and immediately press and hold the switch forward again. The sunroof will tilt up and open, slide open and slide close and then stop. Afterwards, release the switch to complete the initialization operation.

#### ● Sunshade initialization operation

When the sunshade is positioned incorrectly or the automatic sunshade function is disabled, initialization should be done as follows: Set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, and run the sunshade to the fully closed position. At this time, press and hold the sunshade closing button, and release it when the sunshade hits the mechanism stop, then immediately press the button again, and sunshade will open backward, close forward and then stop. Afterwards, release the button to complete the initialization operation.

### ■ Anti-pinch function

In case of an obstacle during the automatic closing, the sunroof/sunshade can automatically return to a safe position.

### ■ Automatic sunroof closing function\*

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the sunroof not closed, the sunroof will be automatically closed after the rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

The automatic window closing function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 163)

### ■ Remote sunroof closing

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key in the operating range to close the sunroof.

### ■ Intelligent sunroof closing

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, carry the smart key with you and press and hold the door handle lock sensing area to close sunroof.



### **WARNING**

#### ■ Precautions for sunroof opening

To avoid serious personal injury, observe the following precautions during sunroof opening:

- When the vehicle is moving, the driver and passengers shall never extend their hands or heads out of the vehicle.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

#### ■ Precautions for sunroof closing

To avoid serious personal injury, observe the following precautions during sunroof closing:

- When closing the sunroof, do check carefully to ensure that no part of the occupants' bodies will be pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

#### ■ During initialization operation

- During initialization, if the switch is released, the initialization operation will fail and need to be repeated.
- After the initialization operation, you need to check all the functions of the sunroof.
- If the initialization cannot be completed, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

#### ■ Anti-pinch function

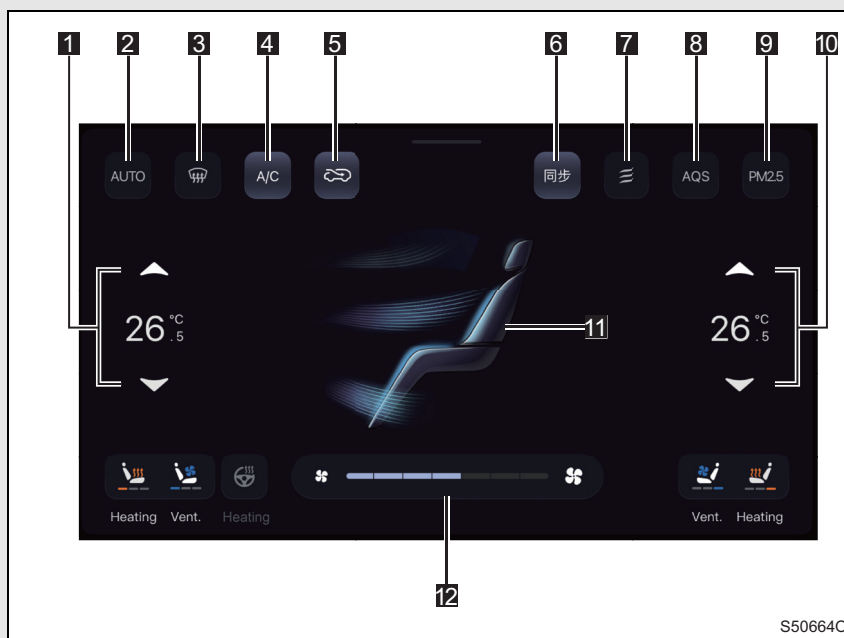
- Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving sunroof with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is pinched when the sunroof/sunshade is about to close fully.

## 4-4. A/C system

### Automatic A/C system

This car is equipped with a dual-zone A/C system that automatically adjusts the outlet air temperature, air volume, air outlet mode and air supply mode to provide the desired driving environment for the occupants according to the temperature setting, combined with the current interior temperature, ambient temperature, sunlight intensity, car speed, water temperature and other environmental parameters.

► A/C operation interface of in-vehicle infotainment system

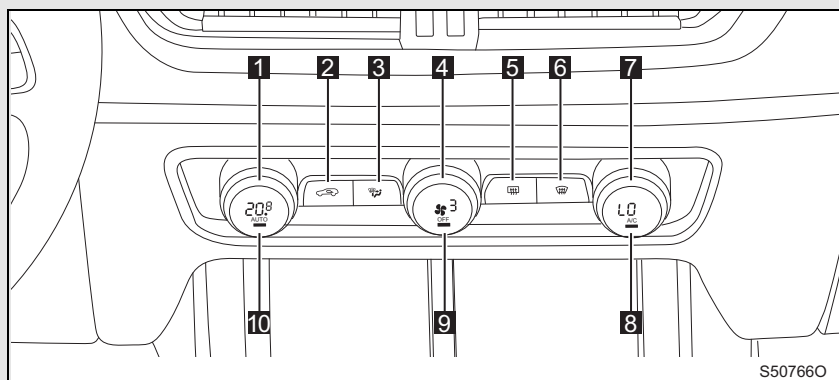


- 1 Driver side temperature setting button
- 2 AUTO button
- 3 Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button
- 4 A/C button
- 5 Recirculation/fresh air mode button
- 6 Synchronization button

- 7** Natural ventilation button
- 8** AQS button
- 9** PM2.5 button
- 10** Front passenger side temperature setting button
- 11** Air outlet mode button
- 12** Air volume setting button

Touch  button on in-vehicle infotainment system to enter A/C interface.

► A/C operation panel

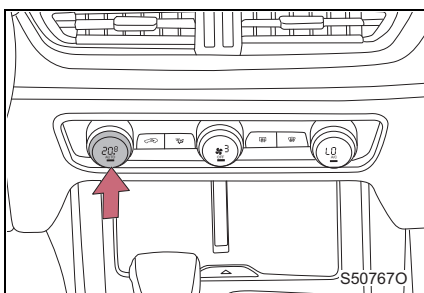


- 1** Driver side temperature setting knob
- 2** Recirculation/fresh air mode button
- 3** Air outlet mode button
- 4** Air volume setting knob
- 5** Windshield heating button
- 6** Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button
- 7** Front passenger side temperature setting knob
- 8** A/C button
- 9** OFF button
- 10** AUTO button

### Using automatic A/C system



Method 1: Touch [AUTO] button on the display, the working indicator lamp will come on, entering the auto A/C mode.



Method 2: Touch [AUTO] button on the A/C operation panel, and the indicator lamp will come on, entering the auto A/C mode.

Set the temperature by adjusting the knob or touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs in automatic A/C mode, and the temperature display also shows the set temperature simultaneously.

#### ■ [AUTO] button indicator lamp

- If the air volume setting or air outlet mode is operated, [AUTO] button indicator lamp goes out.

#### ■ Using automatic mode

The air volume is automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and environmental conditions. Therefore, the following situations may occur.

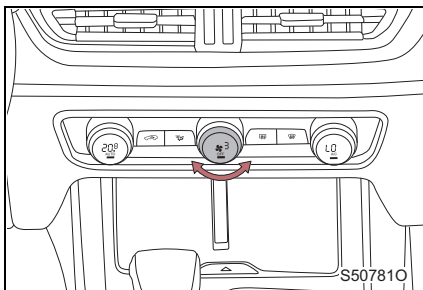
- In summer, when the low temperature setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to the recirculation mode.
- After the switch is pressed, the blower may not turn immediately or may run at low speed until the warm or cold air is ready for normal air supply operation.

## Manual adjustment setting

### ■ Adjusting air volume



Method 1: Operate air volume setting button on the display or drag the air volume setting bar to adjust the air volume of vehicle A/C system among levels 1-7.

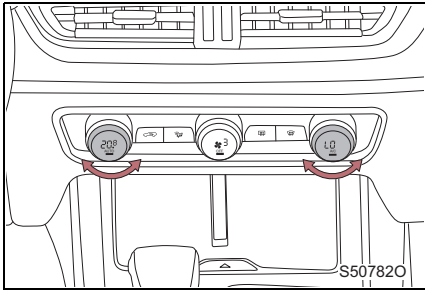


Method 2: Turn air volume setting knob on the A/C operation panel to adjust the air volume of vehicle A/C system among levels 1-7.

### ■ Adjusting temperature



Method 1: Touch the temperature setting button ▲ (increase) or ▼ (decrease) on the display to set the temperature, or slide the temperature display value up and down to set the temperature.

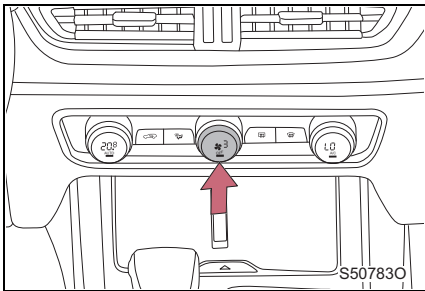


Method 2: Turn the temperature setting knob on the A/C operation panel to set the temperature.

The temperature on the driver side and front passenger side can be adjusted separately.

If the [A/C] button on the display is not on or if the [A/C] button is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow normal-temperature air or hot air into the car.

■ Turning off A/C



Press the [OFF] button on the A/C operation panel to turn off the vehicle A/C system.

■ Switching temperature zone control mode



Touch the [Synchronization] button on the display. Then the indicator lamp will come on, the single temperature zone control mode will be activated, and the temperature on front passenger side will be synchronized to the temperature set on the driver side.

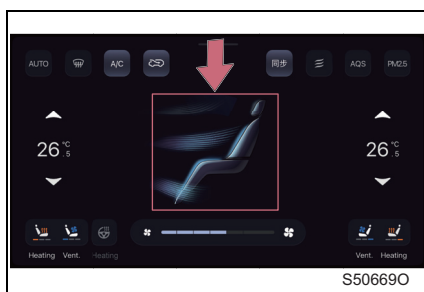
Touch the [Synchronization] button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, the dual temperature zone control mode



will be activated, and the temperature on driver side and on front passenger side can be set separately.

If the temperature on front passenger side is set separately in the single temperature zone control mode, the dual temperature zone control mode will be activated.

#### ■ Switching air outlet mode



Method 1: Touch the wind direction indicator to select the corresponding air outlet mode, and touch it again to cancel the air outlet mode. The air outlet modes can be combined for selection.

Method 2: Press the air outlet mode button on the A/C operation panel to switch the air outlet mode.

-  : Face mode.
-  : Foot mode.
-  : Front windshield mode.
-  : Face and foot mode.
-  : Foot and front windshield mode.

#### ■ A/C switch

When the engine is started, touch the [A/C] button on the display or A/C operation panel. Then the button indicator lamp comes on, and the A/C mode is turned on.

Touch the [A/C] button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the A/C mode is turned off.

Touch the [A/C] button when the ambient temperature is below 5 °C . Then the indicator lamp will be on, but the compressor will not work at this time.

### ■ Switching recirculation/fresh air mode

Touch  button on the display or A/C operation panel, the indicator lamp comes on and the recirculation mode is activated; touch it again, the indicator lamp goes out and the fresh air mode is activated.

In automatic A/C mode, the A/C system automatically switches between recirculation/fresh air modes.

## WARNING

### ■ Do not use the recirculation mode in cold or rainy weather

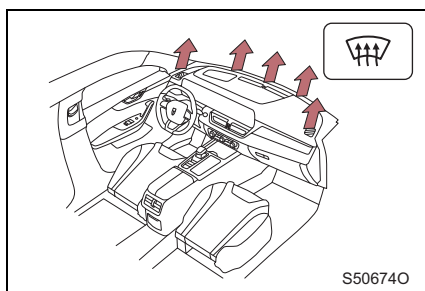
Using the recirculation mode in cold or rainy weather can cause the windows to fog up, which can obstruct your vision and could lead to a serious accident.

### ■ When using recirculation mode

The windows may fog up easily if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

## Other functions

### ■ Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging



Touch  button on the display or A/C operation panel, the indicator lamp comes on, and the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function is turned on.

In the recirculation mode, if the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function is on, the system will automatically switch to the fresh air mode.

Increase the air volume and temperature to defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

### ■ Window fogging

- The windows tend to fog up when the inside humidity is high. Turn on the "A/C" switch to dehumidify the air from the air outlets and effectively defog the front windshield.
- If the "A/C" switch is turned off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.



### WARNING

#### ■ Preventing windshield fogging

- When the weather is extremely humid, do not use the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging mode during cooling operation. The temperature difference between the air outside the car and the windshield may cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, obstructing your vision.
- Do not place any objects on the instrument panel that may cover the air outlets as this may block the airflow and hinder the front windshield defogging.

#### ■ Natural ventilation function

Touch the natural ventilation button on the display to activate the natural ventilation mode, the air inlet mode is switched to fresh air mode. At this time, the compressor stops operating, thus saving energy.

### ■ PM2.5 air purification system\*



Touch [PM2.5] button on the display, the button comes on, and the PM2.5 concentration in the vehicle will be detected. After detection is completed, if concentration is up to standard, the system automatically exits; if concentration is not up to standard, the system automatically carries out filtration, and automatically exits after the filtration is completed.

Press and hold [PM2.5] button to turn on PM2.5 filtration function forcibly. When performing PM2.5 filtration, A/C will switch to recirculation mode automatically, improving filtration effect.

### ■ Air quality control system (AQS)\*

Touch AQS button on the display, the system automatically detects the outside air quality. When the outside air is polluted, the A/C system automatically switches to recirculation mode to prevent polluted air from entering the car, thus guaranteeing proper inside air quality.

---

### ■ Recirculation/fresh air mode

- When driving on dusty roads (e.g. tunnels) or congested roads, switch to the recirculation mode. This effectively prevents outside air from entering the vehicle. During cooling operation, turning on the recirculation mode will also effectively reduce the interior temperature.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

### ■ Windshield defroster

- In the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging mode, the system will switch to fresh air mode from recirculation mode automatically.
- The air volume may increase when the defrosting/defogging function is in operation, which helps defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

#### ■ A/C odor

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the car may enter and accumulate in the A/C system. This may cause odors to emanate from the air outlets.

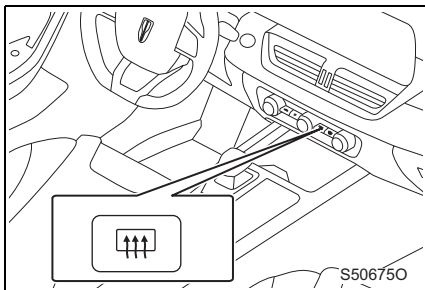


#### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing a low 12 V battery

Turn off the A/C system if it is not needed when the car is not started.

# Windshield heating



Touch  button on the A/C operation panel. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the system starts heating the rear windshield and front windshield.

Touch  button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the system stops.

Note: The system will be turned off automatically after a period of operation and the indicator lamp will go out.

### ■ Front windshield heating

Front windshield electrical heating only heats the wiper stop area.



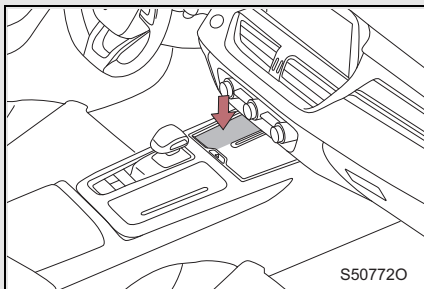
### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions during rear windshield heating

Do not touch the heating area as it may become very hot and cause burns.

# On-board wireless charging\*

**The front of the center storage box is equipped with a wireless charging system.**



Mobile phones that support Qi standard wireless charging can be charged directly in the wireless charging area.

Mobile phones that do not support Qi standard wireless charging need to be charged with a receiver.

### ■ Operating conditions of on-board wireless charging system

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.



### WARNING

#### ■ Pay attention to the following matters when using wireless charging

- Make sure there are no metal objects on the surface of wireless charger before use.
- Do not remove the rubber pad. Ensure that the rubber pad is properly installed before charging.
- When charging the phone, do not place metal objects between the phone and the wireless charger.
- It is recommended to monitor the vehicle battery power when using wireless charging without the car being started.
- Do not place containers containing liquid on the surface of wireless charger to prevent liquid from flowing into the charger.
- Do not use a non-Qi standard receiver for charging, to prevent damage to the charger or receiver.



### CAUTION

#### ■ When charging

- If there are any metal objects (such as coins, keys, rings or paper clips) between the mobile phone and the charger while the phone is charging wirelessly, do not remove them immediately by hand to avoid burning your fingers. Please remove the mobile phone first and wait for the metal objects to cool down before removing them from the charger.
- Remove all items from the anti-slip mat for wireless charging. If there are foreign objects, the system may not charge properly.
- The mobile phone should be placed face up in the middle of the anti-slip mat.

#### ■ Please do not place magnetic cards such as expressway toll cards in the wireless charging area, as they may cause demagnetization.

#### ■ Wireless charging disabled

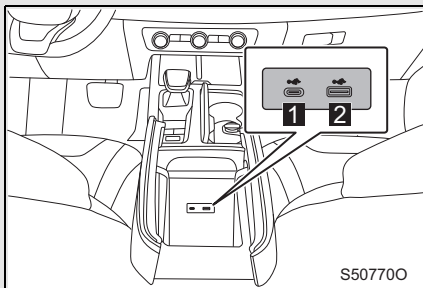
It is normal that if you start the engine or leave the car with the key during wireless charging, the wireless charging will be interrupted for a short time.



## 4-5. Interior power supply

### USB power outlet

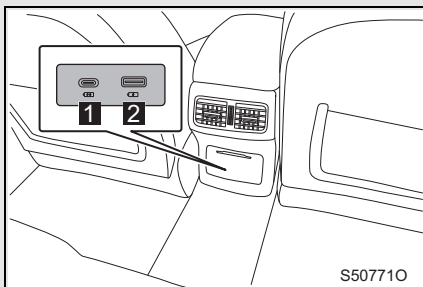
#### ■ Front seating position



1 Type-C connector (10.5W)

2 Type-A connector (10.5W)

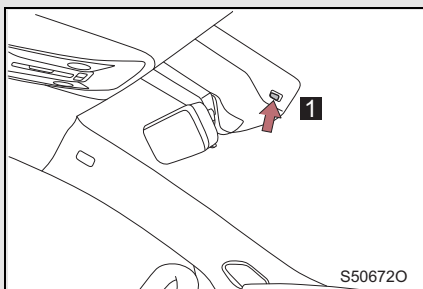
#### ■ Rear seating position



1 Type-C connector (60W)

2 Type-A connector (18W)

#### ■ Front windshield position



1 Type-A connector (10W)

#### ■ Operating conditions of power outlets

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing blown fuses

Do not use accessories rated beyond their capacity.

#### ■ Preventing low battery

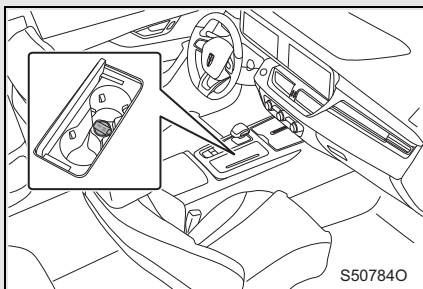
Unless necessary, do not allow the power outlet to be in use for a long time when the car is not started.

## 4-5. Interior power supply

### 12 V backup power

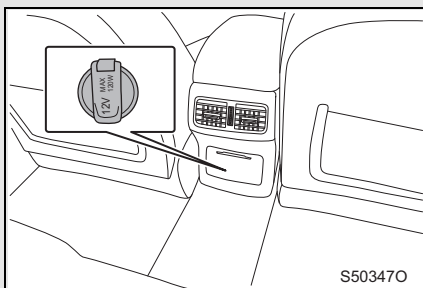
**Backup power can be used for 12 V accessories with operating current of less than 10 A.**

#### ■ Front seating position



Located in the front cup holder.

#### ■ Rear seating position



Located at the lower end of rear center air outlet.

#### ■ Operating conditions of backup power

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing damage to power outlets

When the power outlet is not in use, the power outlet cover should be closed, otherwise foreign objects or liquids will enter the power outlet and cause short circuit.

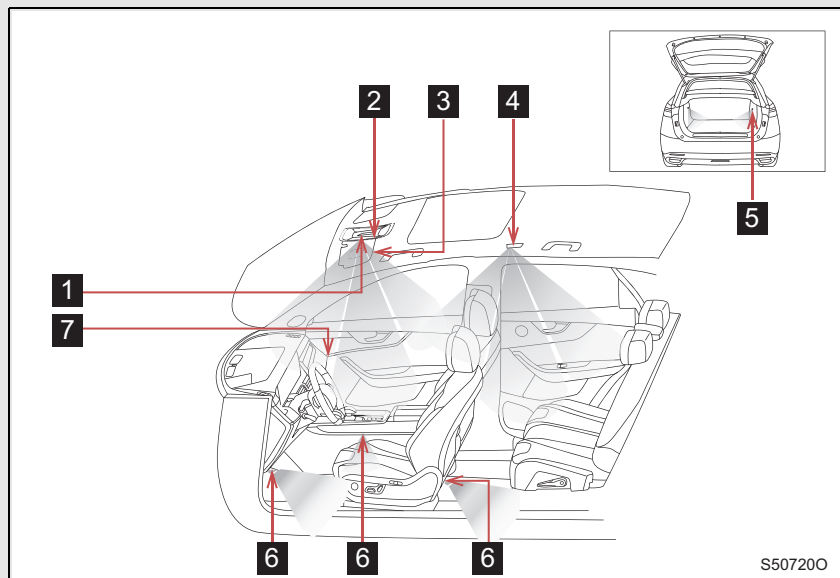
#### ■ Preventing blown fuses

Do not use accessories rated beyond their capacity.

#### ■ Preventing low battery

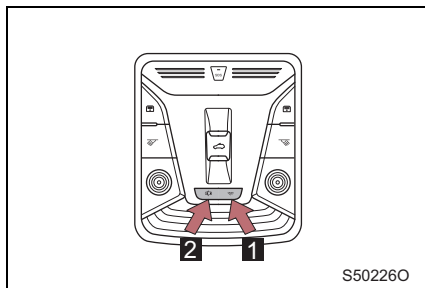
Unless necessary, do not allow the power outlet to be in use for a long time when the car is not started.

## Using interior lamp



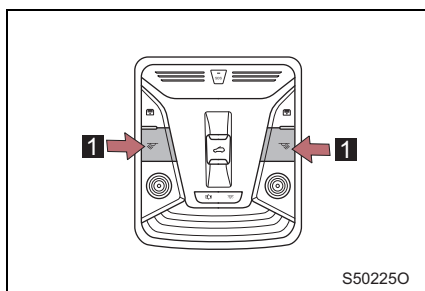
- 1** Front reading lamp
- 2** Front interior lamp
- 3** Vanity mirror lamp
- 4** Rear reading lamp
- 5** Trunk lamp
- 6** Ambient lamp\* (See P. 163)
- 7** Glove box lamp

### Front interior lamp



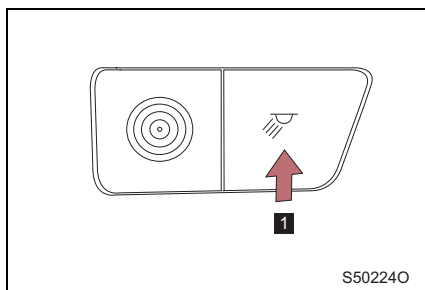
- 1 Touch  button to turn on the front interior lamp, and touch the button again to turn off the front interior lamp.
- 2 Touch  button. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the door linkage function is turned on. Touch the button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the door linkage function is turned off.

### Front reading lamp



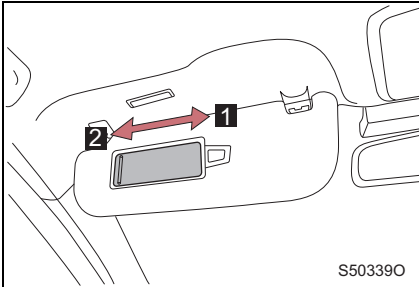
- 1 Touch  button to turn on the front reading lamp, and touch it again to turn off the front reading lamp.

### Rear reading lamp



- 1 Touch  button to turn on the rear reading lamp, and touch it again to turn off the rear reading lamp.

## Vanity mirror lamp



- 1 Open the sun visor and slide open the vanity mirror cover to turn on the vanity mirror lamp.
- 2 Close the vanity mirror cover to turn off the vanity mirror lamp.

### ■ Energy saving control

With the front interior lamp switch in the door linkage position, if the door is opened, the interior lamp will be on for a period of time and then go out; when the engine switch is turned off and the doors are closed, the interior lamp and ambient lamp will go out after a short delay.



### CAUTION

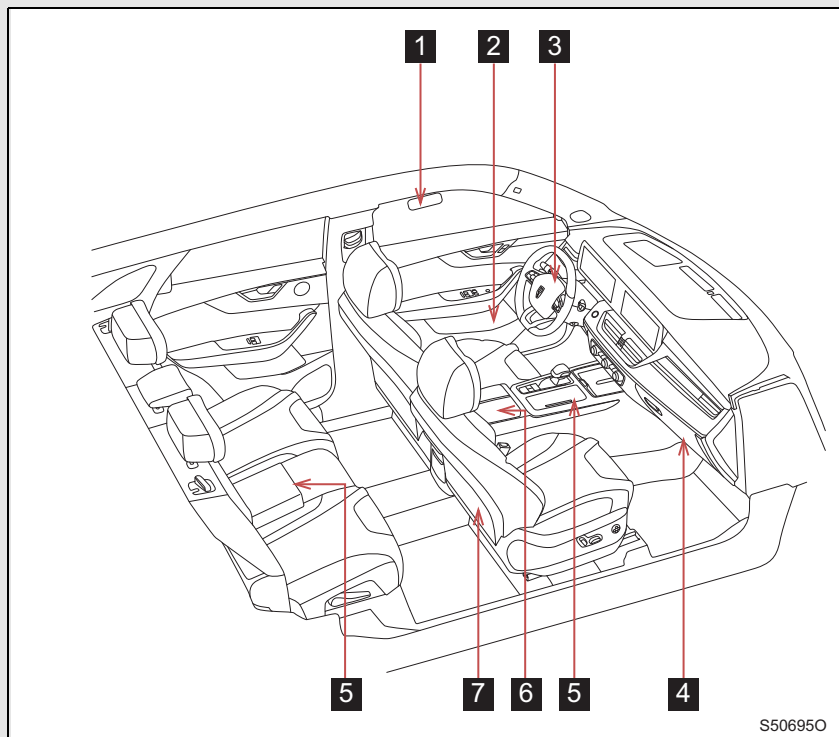
#### ■ Preventing a depleted 12 V battery

Turn off the interior lamps when not needed.

Do not allow the vanity mirror cover or the doors to be in open status for a long time. When they are opened, the corresponding interior lamps will come on and the battery may be depleted.

## 4-7. Storage compartments

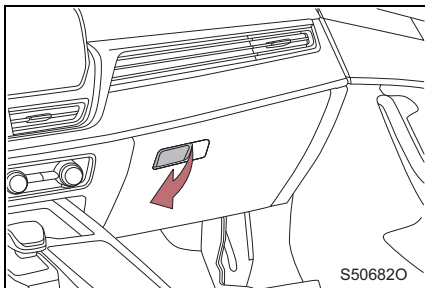
# Using storage compartments



- 1** Glasses box
- 2** Storage box
- 3** Storage box on left lower guard
- 4** Glove box
- 5** Cup holder (front/rear)
- 6** Front center storage box
- 7** Document pocket



## Glove box



Pull the release handle to open the glove box.

When closing the glove box cover, a "click" is emitted to indicate that it is securely locked.

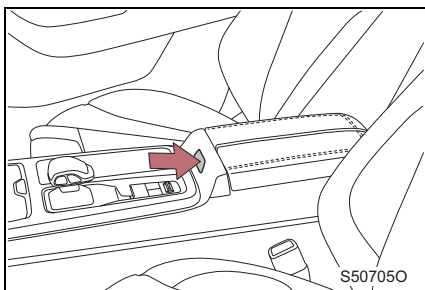
### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the glove box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

## Front center storage box



Press the storage box switch to pop up the front center storage box cover.

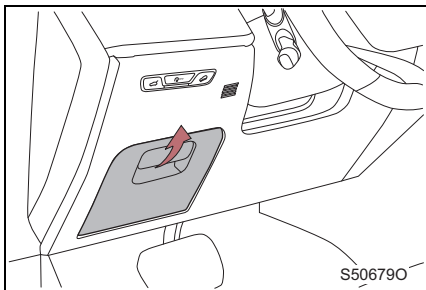
### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the storage box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

### Storage box on left lower guard



Pull the release handle to open the storage box.

When closing the storage box cover, a "click" is emitted to indicate that it is securely locked.

### WARNING

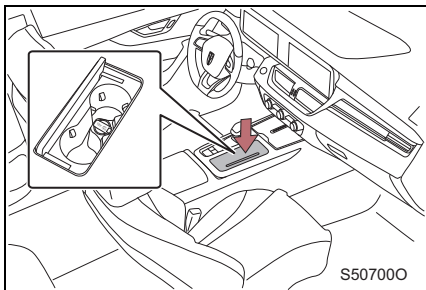
#### ■ Warning during driving

Keep the storage box closed.

Otherwise it may affect normal driving of the driver, and result in injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

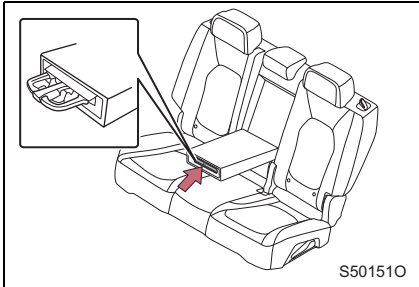
### Cup holder

#### ► Front



Press down the cup holder cover to enable the cup holder cover to automatically flip open.

## ► Rear



Lower the rear center armrest, and press and release the cup holder cover to enable the rear cup holder to automatically pop out.

Retract the cup holder when it is not in use.

■ **When storing a cup in cup holder**

- Tighten the cup cover.
- Depending on size or shape, certain cups may not be stored in the cup holder.

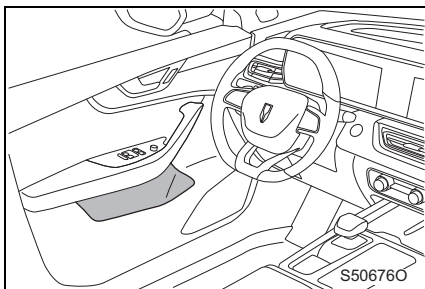
 **WARNING**
■ **When using cup holder**

- Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holder, as such items may be thrown out of the cup holder and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- It is dangerous to use a cup holder for holding a cup with hot liquid, etc. If the liquid inside the cup is spilled, it may cause burns.
- Be careful to prevent foreign objects such as liquids from coming into contact with the electrical parts around the cup holder, as this may cause risk of short circuit or electric shock.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the cup holder closed. Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

### Storage box

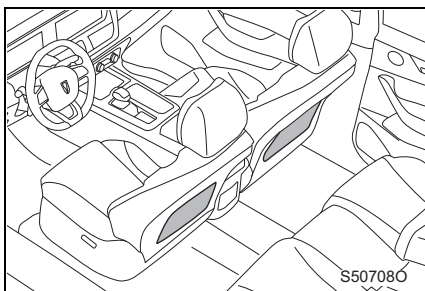


A storage box is provided on each door and can be used to store miscellaneous items such as bottles or rags.

When storing bottles, tighten the caps.

Depending on size or shape, certain bottles may not be stored in the storage box.

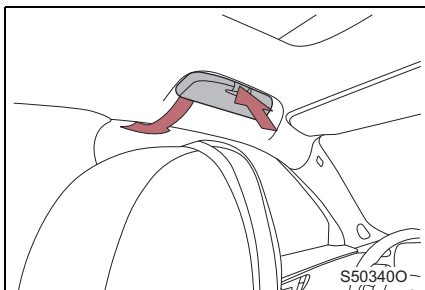
### Document pocket



Document pockets are provided on the rear of the driver's and front passenger's seat backs.

They are used for storing newspapers, magazines and other items.

### Glasses box



Pull down the edge of the lid and the glasses box will open downwards.

It is used to store sunglasses and other small items temporarily.

### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Items unsuitable for storing in glasses box**

Do not leave glasses or lighter in it for a long period of time.

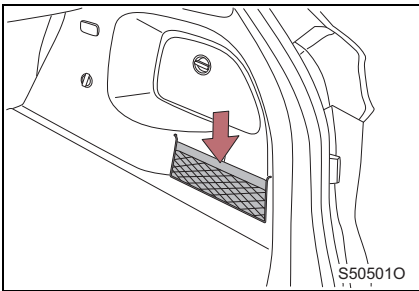
If the interior of vehicle becomes hot, the lighter may explode and the glasses may be deformed by heat.

#### ■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the glasses box closed during driving.

Otherwise, in the event of an accident or emergency stop, the stored items may be thrown out, resulting in personal injury.

### **Storage mesh bag in trunk**

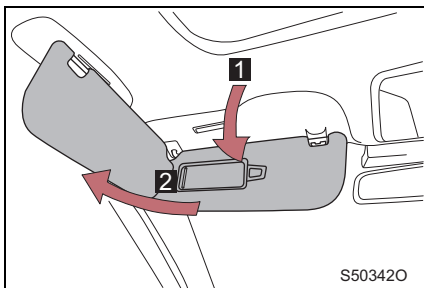


Storage mesh bags are provided on the both sides of the trunk.

## 4-8. Other equipment

# Using other equipment

### Sun visor



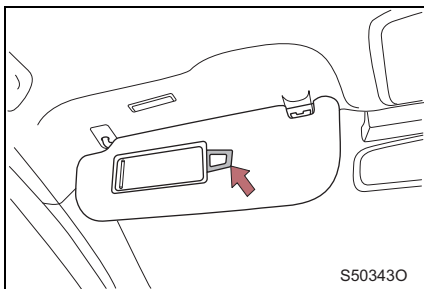
#### 1 Front position

Turn down the sun visor.

#### 2 Side position

Turn down the sun visor, unhook it, and pull it to the side.

### Document holder



The document holder is located on the driver's sun visor.

It is used to store tickets, business cards and other objects.

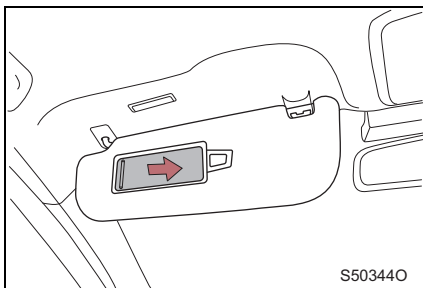


### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing damage to the document holder

Do not put too many objects in the document holder.

## Vanity mirror



Turn down the sun visor and slide the vanity mirror cover to open the mirror.



### CAUTION

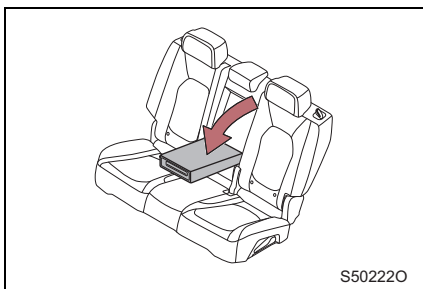
#### ■ When not in use

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

#### ■ Preventing low battery

Do not allow the vanity mirror lamp to be on for a long time while the vehicle is not started.

## Rear center armrest



Pull down the armrest to use it.

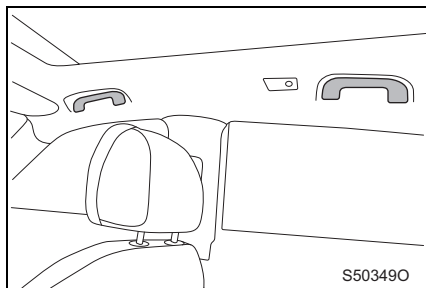


### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing damage to the armrest

- Do not press down hard on the armrest when using it.

## Roof grab handle



The roof grab handles are located at the roof side beams of all doors.

When sitting in the seat, you can have your body supported by the roof grab handles mounted on the headlining.



### WARNING

#### ■ Roof grab handle

Do not use the roof grab handles when getting on and off the vehicle or when getting up from the seat.



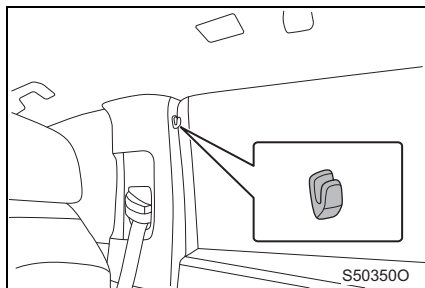
### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing damage to the roof grab handles

Do not hang any heavy objects or apply heavy loads to the roof grab handles to prevent damage.



## Coat hook



You can hang your clothes on the coat hook.



### WARNING

#### ■ Items that should not be hung on coat hook

Do not hang clothes racks or other hard or sharp objects on the coat hook. If the curtain airbag is deployed, these objects may be ejected, resulting in serious injury or death.



### **5-1. Basic operation**

Multimedia display ... 156

Data interface ..... 160

### **5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system**

Setting ..... 162

Entertainment ..... 168

Extended  
application ..... 169

### **5-3. Using hands-free system**

Hands-free system ... 170

5-1. Basic operation

# Multimedia display

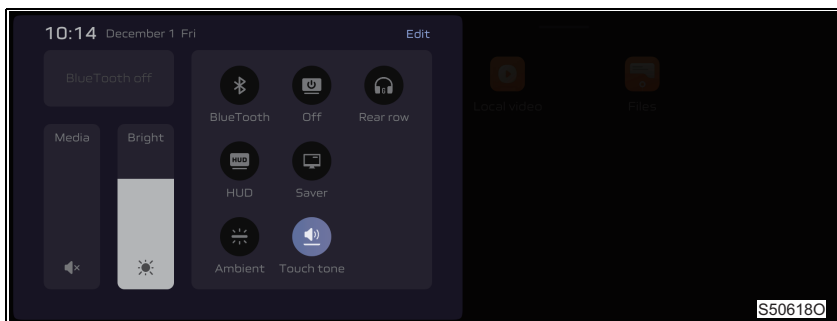
Users can operate the functions such as navigation, phone, radio, music, settings, A/C through the multimedia display.



| No. | Name                       | Function                                                                                                                                           |
|-----|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Main menu interface        | Display the currently playing multimedia information.                                                                                              |
| 2   | Function display interface | Corresponding interface is displayed when turning on each function.                                                                                |
| 3   | Home page                  | Return to the home page.                                                                                                                           |
| 4   | Entertainment              | Enter [Entertainment] function interface<br>You can use the entertainment functions such as music, radio etc.                                      |
| 5   | A/C                        | Enter [A/C] interface<br>A/C system can be set and viewed.                                                                                         |
| 6   | Setting                    | Enter [Setting] function interface<br>Driving, vehicle, display, connection, audio, system and other setting functions can be viewed and operated. |
| 7   | Extended application       | Enter [Extended application] function interface<br>You can view and operate functions such as Bluetooth phone, file management and local video.    |

### ■ Shortcut menu on front entertainment display

With system on, swipe down on the main menu interface to pull out the shortcut menu, and you can perform shortcut operations to view some functions such as message center, etc.



### ■ Preventing damage to the multimedia display

- During operation, touch the multimedia display gently with fingers. If the content shown on the multimedia display cannot be called out, it indicates that the content may not be available at the moment. Do not press the screen buttons excessively to avoid damage to the device.
- Do not use sharp or angular hard objects to touch the multimedia display; otherwise the multimedia display may be damaged.
- Do not spray liquid directly onto the multimedia display. If liquid leaks into the equipment, the electronic components may be damaged.
- When cleaning the surface of the multimedia display, set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode and wipe the screen with a soft and dry cloth. Do not use coarse rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) for cleaning, as they can damage or deteriorate the panel.

### ■ When using the multimedia display

- If the multimedia display is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display may be dark or difficult to see clearly when you wear sunglasses, so change the angle of the multimedia display or remove the sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia display to sunlight for a long time.
- Do not expose the multimedia display to moisture, dust, oil smoke, etc.



### WARNING

#### ■ When using the in-vehicle infotainment system

- Please avoid operating the system as much as possible while driving.
- The volume should be adjusted properly so that the situation outside the vehicle can be heard during driving. Otherwise, an accident may happen.
- Do not use the system in a fault state where there is no image or sound, as this may cause an accident, fire, electric shock or fatal injury.
- Do not operate the system in no-parking areas, as this may result in traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, the use of this function shall never distract your attention or hinder safe driving. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to accidents.

#### ■ Do not disassemble or modify this product without permission, as this may cause traffic accidents, fires, or electric shocks.

#### ■ In case of abnormal conditions such as entry of foreign materials or water ingress, stop using the system immediately and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. If you continue to use the system, a fault may occur.

**CAUTION****■ Preventing a low 12 V battery**

Turn off the in-vehicle infotainment system if it is not needed when the engine is shut down.

**■ Noise from the in-vehicle infotainment system**

- Due to the high sensitivity of this system, the system may make interference noises when closing to TV towers, radio stations, power plants or other places with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- During operation, the in-vehicle infotainment system may make interference noises when a mobile phone is used in or near the car.

**■ Preventing damage to the in-vehicle infotainment system**

Be careful not to spill drinks or other liquids on the in-vehicle infotainment system. If liquid or other objects enter the unit, switch off the power immediately and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

**■ Compatibility**

Some devices may not work properly due to their own compatibility.

**■ In case of a fault**

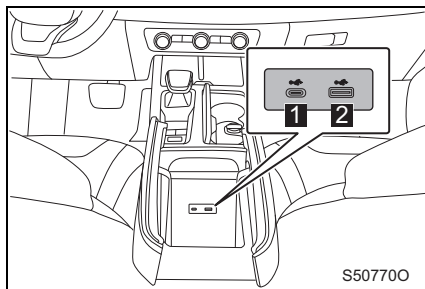
If the fault cannot be eliminated, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## 5-1. Basic operation

### Data interface

After connected to the data interface, an USB device can be operated through the in-vehicle infotainment system.

#### Using the data interface



Open the front center storage box cover, and connect an external multimedia source.

❶ Type-C connector

❷ Type-A connector

#### ■ USB memory

Connect a USB memory device.

If the USB memory is not started, turn on its power supply.



#### WARNING

#### ■ During driving

Do not connect the device or operate its control buttons to prevent accidents.



**CAUTION****■ Preventing damage to USB devices or their terminals**

- Be sure to keep the interface clean. If foreign matter or liquid enters the interface, the in-vehicle infotainment system may malfunction.
- Do not plug high-current USB devices other than U disk and mobile phone, such as mobile hard disks and portable powers.
- Do not leave the USB device in the vehicle, as the temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to the USB devices.
- Do not press or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB device when it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the interface.

**■ Compatibility**

Some devices may not work properly due to their own compatibility.

**■ Ensuring proper system recognition**

USB devices with poor quality may not be identified by the system, so it is recommended to use high-quality USB devices.

**■ When getting off the vehicle**

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

**■ Preventing a depleted battery**

Do not allow the USB port to be in use for a long time when the engine is shut down.

**■ Mobile phone data cable**

The USB cables supplied with mobile phones are recommended for connection to ensure a stable connection.

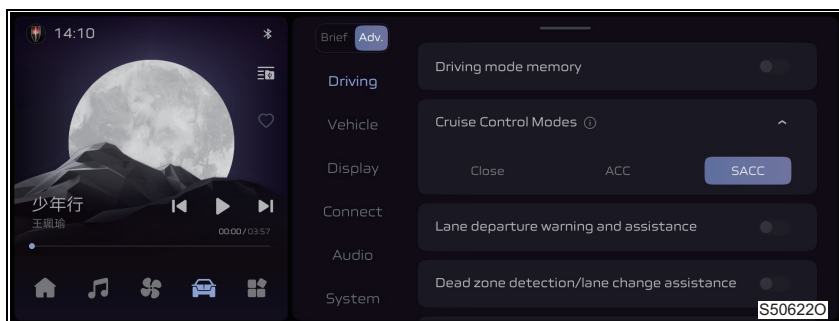
## 5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system

# Setting

On the main menu interface, touch  button to enter setting function interface.

In each setting interface, you can choose simple mode or advanced mode: advanced mode comprehensively introduces vehicle-related settings, while simple mode only introduces common settings. This chapter only takes advanced mode as an example.

### Driving setting



#### 1 Driving mode memory

Set the ON/OFF of driving mode memory function.

#### 2 Cruise mode

Set the ON/OFF of cruise function. Cruise mode can be set to SACC or ACC.

#### 3 Lane departure warning and assistance

- Warning mode: Set the ON/OFF of lane departure warning, the alarm mode can be set to Lane Departure Warning (LDW), alarm + Lane Keeping Assist (LKA).
- Warning sensitivity: Alarm trigger sensitivity can be set to low or high.

#### 4 Blind spot detection/lane change assist

Set the ON/OFF of blind spot detection/lane change assist function.

**5 Forward collision warning**

- Forward collision warning: Set the ON/OFF of forward collision warning function.
- Autonomous emergency braking: Set the ON/OFF of autonomous emergency braking.

**6 Rear collision warning**

- Rear cross traffic alert: Set the ON/OFF of rear cross traffic alert function.
- Rear collision warning: Set the ON/OFF of rear collision warning function.

**7 Speed limit reminder**

Set the ON/OFF of limit speed reminder.

- Speed limit mode: The speed limit mode can be set to manual or intelligent speed limit reminder (TSR).

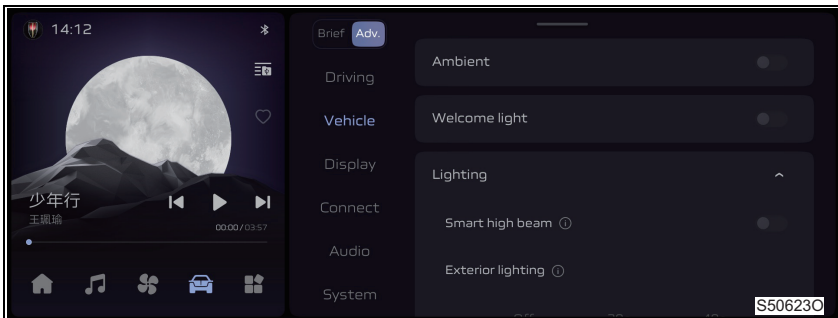
**8 AUTO HOLD**

Set the ON/OFF of AUTO HOLD function.

**9 Driving and safety**

- ESC OFF: Set the ON/OFF of electronic stability control.
- Door opening warning: Set the ON/OFF of the door opening warning function.

## Vehicle setting

**1 Ambient lamp**

Set the ON/OFF of ambient lamp.

- It can be used to adjust brightness and color, and let the ambient lamp color switch along with driving mode.

### **2** Welcome lamp

Set the ON/OFF of ambient lamp when the vehicle is unlocked or locked.

### **3** Lighting

- Intelligent high beam lamp: Set the ON/OFF of intelligent high beam control system.
- Exterior auxiliary lighting: Set the ON/OFF and lighting time of getting-off lighting and boarding lighting.

### **4** Door and window adjustment

- Auto proximity unlocking: Set the ON/OFF of auto proximity unlocking.

When this function is turned on, if the driver approaches the vehicle with the smart key carried, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically.

- Auto closing of windows in rainy days: Set the ON/OFF of automatic window and sunroof closing function in rainy days.
- Auto closing of windows after locking the vehicle: Set the ON/OFF of automatic window and sunroof closing function after locking the vehicle.

### **5** Exterior rearview mirror auto folding when locking

Set the ON/OFF of automatic folding function for exterior rearview mirrors.

### **6** Easy access

Set the ON/OFF of courtesy function.

### **7** Wiper service position

Set the ON/OFF of wiper service position.

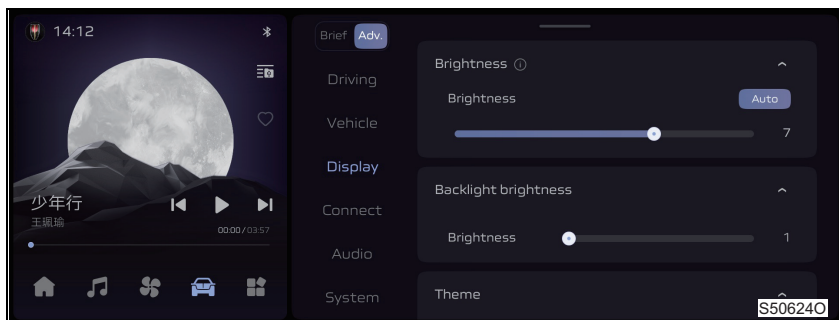
When the wiper service position function is turned on, place the wiper in the service position if conditions permit.

### **8** Forgotten phone reminder

Set the ON/OFF of forgotten phone reminder.

When this function is turned on, if engine switch is turned off when the mobile phone is in wireless charging area, the instrument cluster will give a reminder.

## Display setting



### 1 Brightness

Display mode: Two display modes can be set: Auto, non-auto.

In auto mode, the daytime display brightness can be set when the position lamp is turned off, and the nighttime display brightness can be set when the position lamp is turned on. After setting, it will be automatically adjusted to the set brightness when the position lamp is turned on/off.

### 2 Instrument cluster and vehicle backlight brightness

Current brightness: Instrument cluster and vehicle backlight brightness can be adjusted.

### 3 Theme

The theme can be set as automatic, light color and dark color; Under dark theme, classic or science and technology mode can be selected.

### 4 Screen on/off

Set the ON/OFF of multimedia display.

### 5 Electronic interior rearview mirror (stream media interior rearview mirror)

- Display area: Display area can be set from gears 0-6.
- Display brightness: Brightness can be adjusted from levels 0-10.

### 6 Wallpaper

Wallpaper can be set as a mechanical clock, digital clock or slide.

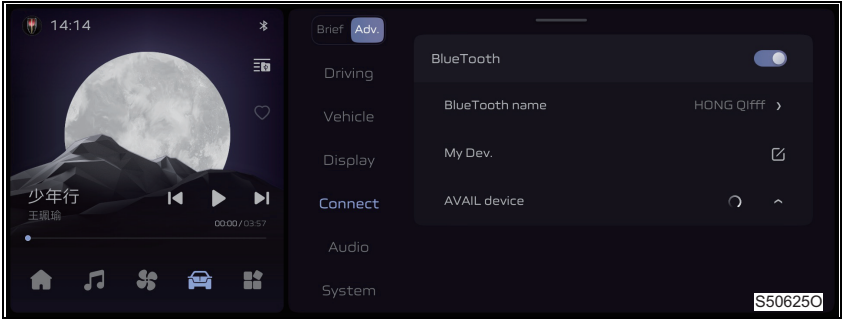
### 7 Head-up display

Set the ON/OFF of head-up display.

- Current brightness: The display brightness of head-up display can be set.

- Height adjustment: The display height of head-up display can be set.
- Display content: The lane keeping assist, autonomous emergency braking, intelligent speed limit reminder and cruise information display can be set to ON/OFF.

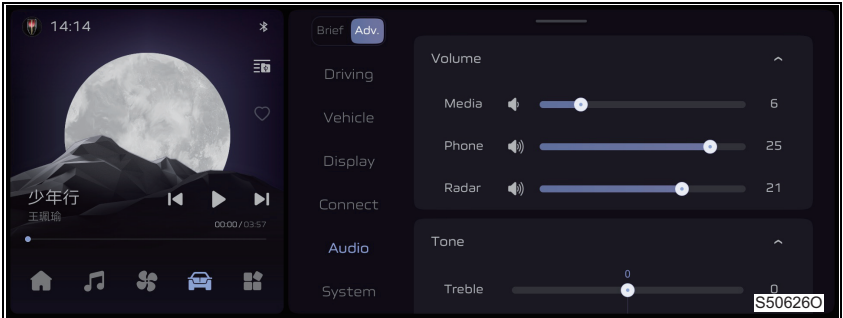
Connection settings



1 Bluetooth

- Bluetooth can be turned on or off. When Bluetooth is turned on, the saved devices and available devices can be viewed, connected and deleted, and the Bluetooth name can be set at the same time.

Audio setting



1 Volume

- The volume of multimedia, phone, radar and other functions can be adjusted.

**2 Timbre**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted.

**3 Sound effect mode**

Four modes can be set: Normal balance, driver seat priority, rear VIP, and virtual surround sound.

**4 Sound field balance**

By dragging the circular cursor, you can select the optimal sound field position and restore the default reset.

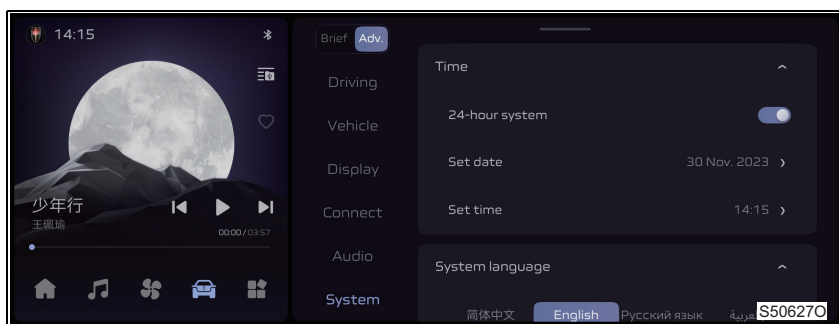
**5 Key tone**

Set the ON/OFF of screen key tone.

**6 Alarm tone**

Alarm tone can be set to high, medium and low.

## System setting

**1 Time and date**

- 24h: 24h system is applied at power-on; 12h system is applied at power-off.
- Date setting: The date can be set manually.
- Time setting: The time can be set manually.

**2 Language**

Language can be set to simplified Chinese, English, Russian or Arabic.

**3 About the system**

System message can be viewed.

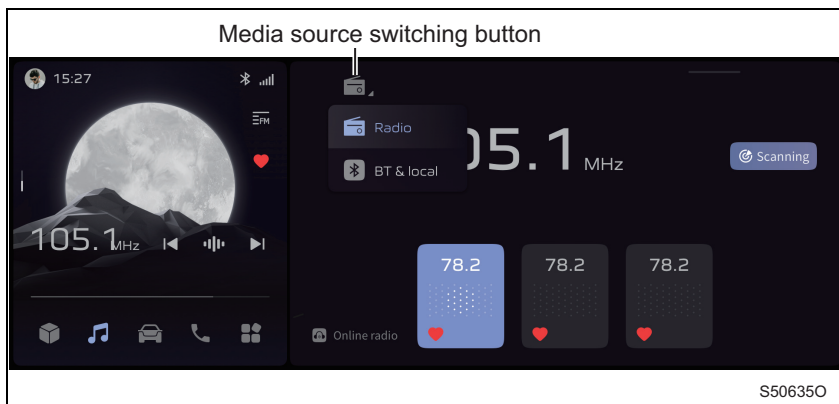
**4 Factory reset**

System can be restored to factory setting.

## 5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system

# Entertainment

On the main menu interface, touch  button to enter the entertainment function interface.



### 1 Radio

Play and search FM radio and AM radio.

### 2 Bluetooth & local

View and play the local music and Bluetooth music.

### ■ Antenna

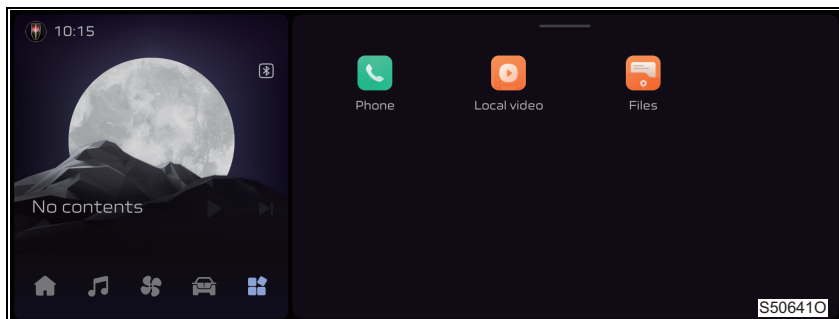
The radio antenna is built into the shark fin antenna.



## 5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system

### Extended application

On the main menu interface, touch  button to enter the extended application function interface.



#### 1 Bluetooth phone

On-board Bluetooth phone can be connected and used.

#### 2 Mobile phone interconnection

Interconnection display between mobile phone and vehicle can be achieved.

#### 3 Local video

View and play the local video.

#### 4 File management

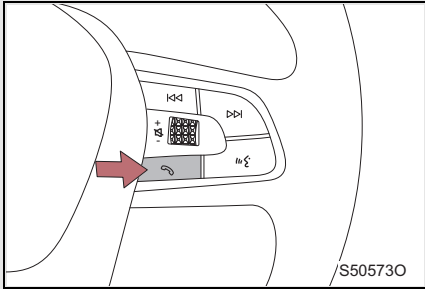
View and manage local, USB1 and USB2 files.

# Hands-free system

**The hands-free system has the function of operating the phone without touching the mobile phone.**

This system support Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that establishes wireless connection between the mobile phone and the hands-free system.

■ Phone button



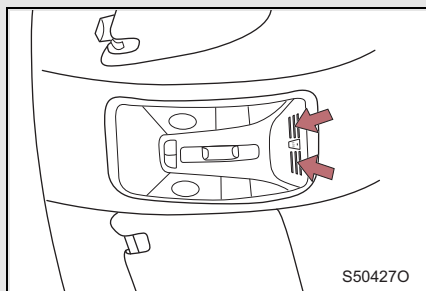
The phone button is located in the position shown in the figure.

**See the following table for specific functions:**

| Information description | Function                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Press                   | In case of an incoming call: Answer the current incoming call<br>End the current call when there is call/dial-out<br>In case of no incoming call: Enter the call history |
| Press and hold          | In case of an incoming call: Hang up the current call<br>In case of no incoming call: Automatically dial out the last call                                               |

Before using the hands-free system, you must bind a Bluetooth phone.

### ■ Bluetooth microphone



Located near the front interior lamp.

- If the volume of reception is too high, you may hear an echo.
- Try to face the microphone when speaking.
- Under the following circumstances, it may be difficult for the other party to hear the sound:
  - Phone signal is poor.
  - Drive on an unpaved road.
  - Drive at high speed.
  - Window is open.
  - The A/C outlet is facing the microphone.
  - The air volume of A/C blower is too high.

### ■ The system will be inoperative under the following conditions:

- The used phone does not support Bluetooth®.
- The mobile phone is turned off or in flight mode.
- The current location is outside the service area.
- The mobile phone is not connected.
- The mobile phone battery is low.

### ■ Bluetooth® antenna

If a mobile phone is placed in the storage box, or in contact with or covered by metal materials, its connection state may deteriorate.

### ■ Battery level/signal status

This display may not be exactly consistent with that of mobile phones.

### ■ About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth® is the trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

#### ■ **Compatible type**

The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with Bluetooth certified (SIG) phones sold through regular channels and of mainstream brands.



#### **CAUTION**

#### ■ **When getting off the vehicle**

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

**6-1. Instrument information**

Instrument cluster .... 174

Information on multi-  
function display of  
instrument cluster ... 176

Head up display\* ..... 179

**6-2. Driving specifications**

Driving the vehicle .... 181

Engine (start)  
switch ..... 190

Gearshift control ..... 192

Driving mode ..... 199

**6-3. Operating lamps and  
wipers**

Headlamp switch ..... 203

Turn signal lamp control  
lever ..... 206Intelligent high beam  
control (IHC)\* ..... 207

Fog lamp switch ..... 209

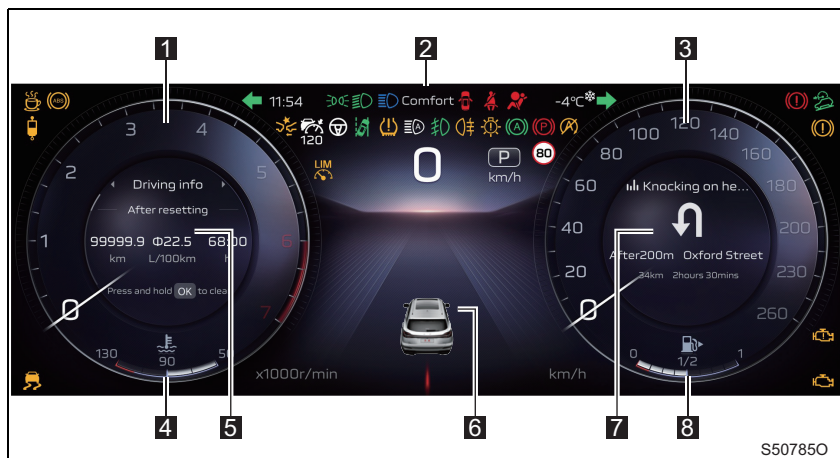
Front windshield wiper &  
washer ..... 210Rear windshield wiper &  
washer ..... 214**6-4. Using driver assistance  
system**

Cruise control\* ..... 216

Adaptive cruise control  
(ACC)\* ..... 220Super adaptive cruise  
control (SACC)\* ..... 230Tire pressure monitoring  
system (TPMS) ..... 242Lane departure warning/  
lane keeping assist  
(LDW/LKA)\* ..... 244Forward collision warning  
(FCW)\* ..... 248Autonomous emergency  
braking (AEB)\* ..... 251Blind spot detection  
(BSD)\* ..... 255Traffic sign recognition  
(TSR)\* ..... 260Idle stop-start  
system\* ..... 262Driver assistance  
system ..... 267

## 6-1. Instrument information

### Instrument cluster



Depending on vehicle configurations, the specific displayed information will vary.

**1** Tachometer

Display the engine RPM.

**2** Prompt/alarm icon display area

Display information on car indicator lamps and warning lamps.

**3** Speedometer

Display the vehicle speed.

**4** Engine coolant temperature display area

Display the engine coolant temperature information.

**5** Driving information display area

Display driving information, tire pressure monitoring, alarm query and drive mode setting, etc.

**6** Comprehensive information display area

Display information on gear, vehicle speed, driving assistance, date and various alarms/prompts, etc.

**7** Media information display area

Display information on music, radio, call, etc. in the in-vehicle infotainment system.

**8** Fuel gauge display area

Display the remaining fuel amount.

**WARNING****■ Prevent damage to engine and its components**

- If the tachometer pointer is in the red zone, it indicates that the engine speed is close to the maximum value. In this case, control the speed.
- If the temperature gauge pointer is in the red zone, the engine may have overheated. In this case, park the car in a safe place immediately, and then check the engine after it cools down completely.

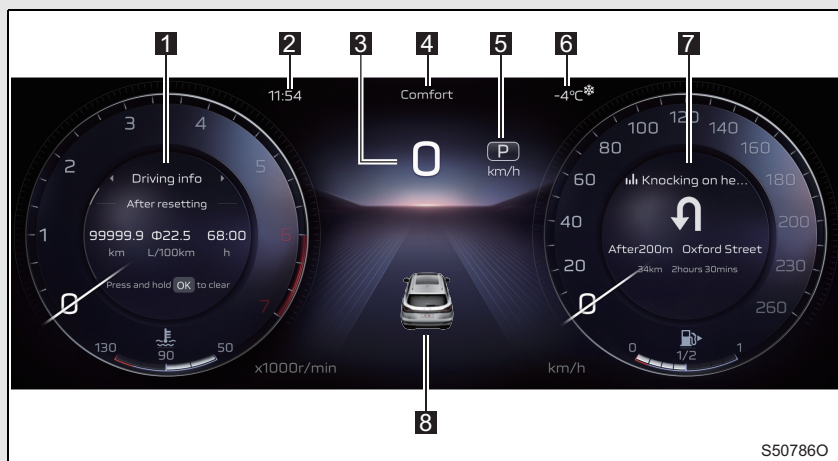
**■ In case of brightness adjustment**

For the sake of safety, please adjust the backlight brightness during parking, and do not distract attention and hinder safe driving for using this function. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to accidents.

## 6-1. Instrument information

### Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster

The driver can view driving-related information and audio information through the driving information display area, media information display area and comprehensive information display area in the instrument cluster.



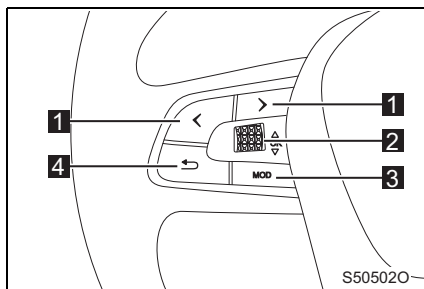
- 1** Driving information display area
- 2** Time display area  
Display the clock information.
- 3** Speed display area  
Display the current speed of the car.
- 4** Driving mode display area  
Display the current driving mode information.
- 5** Gear display area  
Display the current gear of the car.
- 6** Environmental information display area  
Display the outside ambient temperature.
- 7** Media information display area
- 8** Comprehensive information display area

S507860



## Buttons on steering wheel

### ■ Buttons on the left of steering wheel



**1** Left/right selection button

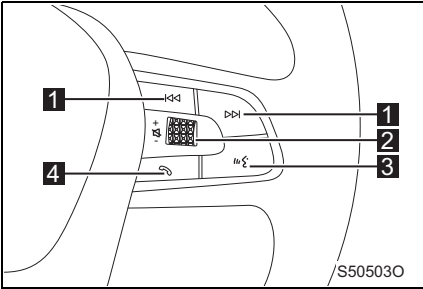
**2** Scroll wheel

**3** MOD button

**4** Back button

| No. | Function                                                                                        |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Press: Switch between driving information, tire pressure monitoring, alarm query and drive mode |
| 2   | Scroll: Switch options up and down<br>Press: Confirm the selection                              |
| 3   | Press: Switch multimedia audio sources                                                          |
| 4   | Press: Return to the previous interface                                                         |

■ Buttons on the right of steering wheel



- 1 Track/radio station button
- 2 Scroll wheel
- 3 Voice recognition button\*
- 4 Phone button

| No. | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Press: Previous track (radio station)/next track (radio station)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 2   | Scroll: Increase/decrease the volume, and unmute the media source in mute state<br>Press: Mute/unmute                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 3   | — —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 4   | Press: Answer the current incoming call when there is an incoming call<br>End the current call when there is call/dial-out<br>In case of no incoming call: Enter the call history<br>Press and hold: End the current call when there is an incoming call<br>In case of no incoming call: Automatically dial out the last call |

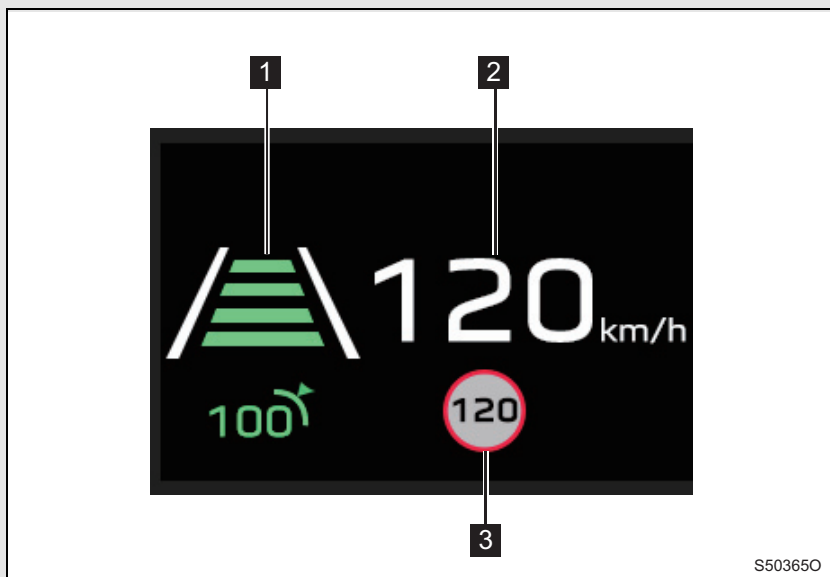
 **WARNING**

■ **During driving**

During operation of buttons on steering wheel, extra care must be taken to avoid accidents.

### Head up display\*

The head up display is linked with instrument panel and in-vehicle infotainment system, projecting driving assistance and navigation information on the front windshield facing the driver.



**1** Driver assistance system display area

Display the cruise, forward collision warning, lane keeping assist, autonomous emergency braking, and other information.

**2** Vehicle speed display area

Display the current vehicle speed.

**3** Speed limit warning system display area

Display the current road speed limit or gear information.

### Usage of head up display

#### ■ Head up display setting

The head-up display can be set in the vehicle settings of in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.165)



### WARNING

#### ■ Before using head up display

- Check that the position and brightness of the head up display do not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the position or brightness can interfere with the driver's visibility and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

#### ■ During driving

- During driving, do not continue to stare at the head up display, otherwise you may not be able to see pedestrians and objects on the road in front of the vehicle.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Prevent damage to components

- Do not place any liquid near the head up display projector. If the projector becomes wet, it may cause electrical failure.
- Do not place any items or stickers on the head up display projector. Otherwise, the display on the head up display may be interrupted.
- Do not touch the head up display projector or throw objects with sharp edges at the projector. Otherwise, it may cause mechanical failure.

# Driving the vehicle

**The following driving specifications must be observed to ensure safe driving.**

■ Starting engine (see P.190)

■ Driving

**Step 1** Depress the brake pedal and set the shift lever to D position, to release the EPB automatically.

**Step 2** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the car.

■ Stop

**Step 1** When the shift lever is set to D position, depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** If necessary, apply the EPB.

For long-term parking, be sure to set the shift lever to P or N position.

■ Parking

**Step 1** When the shift lever is set to D position, depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** Press the P position button and set the shift lever to P position, to apply the EPB automatically.

**Step 3** Press the engine switch to shut down the engine.

**Step 4** Lock the doors and make sure to carry the key with you.

### Starting on a steep slope

**Step 1** The driver fastens the seat belt, closes the doors, firmly depresses the brake pedal and sets the shift lever to D position.

Make sure the gear indicator lamp shows D.

**Step 2** Manually apply the EPB.

**Step 3** Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

---

#### ■ During starting on an uphill slope

The Hill Hold Control (HHC) will be activated automatically to prevent the car from slipping. (See P.268)

#### ■ Emergency stop signal (ESS)

When a certain speed is reached, if emergency braking is applied, the brake lamp flashes quickly to remind the rear vehicle until the brake pedal is released.

#### ■ Driving in the rain

- When it rains, as the visibility is reduced, it is liable to fog up on the windows and the road is slippery, drive the vehicle with caution.
- When it rains, do not drive at a high speed because a water film will form between tires and road surface, hindering the normal operation of steering and brake.

#### ■ Overspeed alarm\*

The overspeed alarm function will be activated when driving vehicle at a speed of more than 120 km/h. Please slow down at this time.

#### ■ Running in new car

To extend the life of the car, it is recommended that you observe the following precautions:

- Within the first 1,000 km:
  - Do not perform emergency stop.
  - Do not drive at a very high speed.
  - Do not accelerate suddenly.
  - Do not keep driving at a low speed.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for a long time.

#### ■ Driving abroad

Please comply with the laws and regulations of the corresponding country or region, and make sure that applicable fuel can be obtained locally.

**WARNING****■ During start**

When the engine starts and the car stops, always depress and hold the brake pedal with one foot. This will prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

**■ Precautions when driving**

- If you are not familiar with the position of brake pedal and accelerator pedal, do not drive to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed when the brake pedal should be depressed, sudden acceleration will be caused, which may lead to serious accidents.
  - Although the car is equipped with reverse image system and parking radar, please operate the accelerator pedal carefully during reversing.
  - During reversing, as it may be inconvenient to operate the pedal due to body wriggle, ensure proper sitting posture to operate the pedal.
  - Even if you move the vehicle slightly, you should keep the correct driving posture, so that you can depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal accurately.
  - Depress the brake pedal with your right foot. If the brake pedal is depressed with the left foot in an emergency, the response may be delayed, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive over flammables or park near them.  
Flammables may be ignited because the exhaust system and exhaust gas are extremely hot.
- Do not move the car backward when the shift lever is set to D or P position, or forward when the shift lever is set to R or P position; otherwise, it may cause accidents or damage the car.
- If you smell exhaust gas in the car, open the windows.  
A large amount of exhaust gas in the car may seriously endanger the health of driver and passengers, or even cause accidents.
- Do not set the shift lever to P, R or N position when the car is moving forward; otherwise, it may seriously damage the automatic transmission and cause the car to lose control.



### WARNING

- Do not set the shift lever to P, D, M or N position when the car is moving backwards; otherwise, it may seriously damage the automatic transmission and cause the car to lose control.
- Do not set the shift lever to N position during driving; otherwise, the engine brake may not work normally, causing an accident.
- Do not shut down the engine during driving.  
If the engine is not running, the brake booster, etc. will not work normally.
- When going down a steep slope, please use the engine braking (downshift) function to maintain a safe vehicle speed.  
Continuous use of the brake may cause brake overheating and failure.
- When the car is parked on an inclined road, depress the brake pedal and apply the EPB to prevent the car from moving forward or backward, causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of steering wheel, seat, interior or exterior rearview mirror during driving; otherwise, it may cause accidents.
- Be sure to check that all occupants' arms, heads or other body parts are not stuck out of the car; otherwise, serious personal injury may be caused.



**WARNING****■ When driving on a slippery road**

- Emergency braking, acceleration and turns may cause wheel slippage and reduce the maneuverability of the car, causing accidents.
- A abrupt change in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by downshifting, may cause car slippage, causing accidents.
- After the car passes through a puddle, gently depress the brake pedal to confirm that the brake functions normally. With wet brake linings, the brake cannot function normally. Even if only brake linings on one side get wet, it will affect car control.

**■ When operating the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift gears when depressing the accelerator pedal; otherwise, the car may be accelerated suddenly, thus causing accidents.

**■ When the vehicle stops**

- Do not run the engine at a high speed.  
If the shift lever is in a position other than P or N, the car may be accelerated suddenly, thus causing accidents.
- Do not leave the car for a long time when the engine is running.  
If this situation cannot be avoided, please park the car in an open place and check that the exhaust gas does not enter the car.
- When the engine is running, please make sure that the EPB works normally; otherwise, your foot should always depress the brake pedal to prevent accidents caused by car movement.



### WARNING

#### ■ After the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave spectacles, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the car at a high temperature place; otherwise, the following unexpected circumstances may occur.
  - Gas leaks from lighters or sprayers and causes fires.
  - The interior temperature may deform or rupture the lenses and other plastic parts of spectacles.
  - A soft drink can may rupture, which will cause the beverage to spill onto interior trims of car, and may also cause short circuit in electrical components of the car.
- Be sure to apply the EPB, set the shift lever to P position, turn off the engine switch and lock the car.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe when the engine is running or just after it is shut down; otherwise, it may cause a scald.
- Do not keep the engine running in places with deep snow or where it is snowing.

If the car is trapped in snow when the engine is running, the exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the car. This may seriously endanger health.
- Avoid engine idling at a high speed.

Running the engine at high speed with the car stopped may cause the exhaust system overheating, and if there are flammables nearby, a fire may be caused.



## WARNING

### ■ Exhaust gas

- Exhaust gas contains colorless and odorless harmful gas - carbon monoxide (CO). Inhaling a large amount of exhaust gas may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.
- If the car is parked in a poorly ventilated place, shut down the engine. In a closed place, such as a garage, exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the car. This may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.
- The exhaust system should be checked irregularly. If there are holes or cracks, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise due to corrosion, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and repair the car.

### ■ While napping in the car

Be sure to shut down the engine. Otherwise, it is possible to accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, thus causing an accident or engine overheating. In addition, if the car is parked in a poorly ventilated place, the exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the car, which may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.

### ■ When applying the brake

- Drive carefully when the brake is wet.  
When the brake is wet, the braking distance will increase, the braking effects on both sides of the car may be different, and the parking brake may not hold the car still.
- If the brake assist function is abnormal, do not follow other vehicles at close range, and avoid going down long slopes or sharp turns.  
In this case, a greater force than usual is required to depress the brake pedal, and the braking distance may also increase.
- If the engine stalls, do not depress the brake pedal repeatedly. Part of the pressure used for brake boost will be consumed every time the brake pedal is depressed.



### CAUTION

#### ■ During driving

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time, otherwise the engine output may be limited.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time to park on a slope.

#### ■ Using the car in cold weather (below 0 °C )

It is recommended to idle for 1-3 minutes after cold start, and then drive after the oil temperature is raised, which is conducive to fuel saving, protection of the engine and transmission, and enhancement of driving comfort.

#### ■ Using the car use in extremely cold weather (below -25 °C )

There may be a short delay in switching gears at extreme cold temperature; you must make sure that the car is in the correct gear before driving.

#### ■ When parking

For long-term parking, be sure to apply the EPB and set the shift lever to P position. Otherwise, it may cause the car to move, or suddenly accelerate when the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

#### ■ Avoid damaging car parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel to the limit in either direction and keep it for a long time; otherwise, the power steering system will be damaged.
- During driving on a bumpy road, try to drive at a low speed to avoid damaging the wheels and bottom of the car.

#### ■ In case of flat tire during driving

Tire leakage or damage may cause the following conditions:

- It may be difficult to control the car.
- The car will make abnormal sounds.
- The car runs abnormally.

In case of tire leakage or damage during driving, hold the steering wheel, slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the speed, and replace the flat tire with a new one in time.

**CAUTION****■ In case of water-logged road**

Do not drive on a road with deep water; otherwise, the car may suffer the following serious damage.

- The engine stalls.
- The electrical components are short-circuited.
- The engine is damaged due to water ingress.

After the vehicle runs on a water-logged road and water enters the vehicle, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible to check the following items.

- Check whether the brake functions normally.
- Check whether the oil and transmission fluid are normal.
- Check whether the hub bearing, drive shaft and suspension are normal.

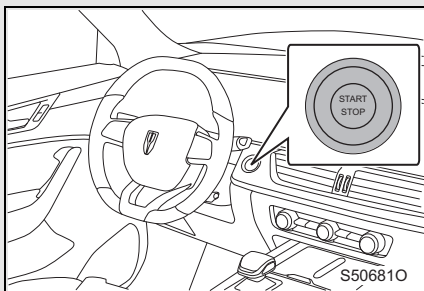
## 6-2. Driving specifications

# Engine (start) switch

**You can switch the mode of engine (start) switch or start the engine when carrying the smart key.**

### ■ Switching the mode of engine (start) switch

When the brake pedal is released, you can switch between OFF mode and IG-ON mode by pressing the engine (start) switch. (The mode is switched each time the button is pressed.)



#### OFF mode\*<sup>1</sup>

The light horns, position lamps and hazard warning lamp can be used.

#### IG-ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

\*<sup>1</sup>: Before shutting down the engine, set the shift lever to P position.

### ■ Starting the engine

**Step 1** Check that the shift lever is set to P or N position and the EPB has been applied.

**Step 2** Sit in the driver seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

**Step 3** Press the engine (start) switch to start the engine.

### ■ Stopping the engine

**Step 1** Stop the car completely.

**Step 2** Set the shift lever to P position and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.

**Step 3** Press the engine (start) switch to stop the engine.

### ■ In case of failure to start the engine

The engine IMMO system may have not been deactivated. (See P.67)



### WARNING

#### ■ During engine start

Be sure to start the engine while sitting in the driver seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the engine under any circumstances.

Otherwise, accidents may occur, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

#### ■ Precautions when driving

During driving, if the engine is to be forcibly shut down in an emergency, press and hold the engine switch for more than 3 s, or press it for 3 consecutive times within 2 s.

Do not touch the engine switch during driving, except in an emergency. If the engine is shut down during driving, it may cause accidents.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing low battery

- Do not set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode for a long time when the engine is shut down; otherwise, the 12 V battery may be low.
- When leaving the car, the driver should lock the car and carry the key. Do not leave the key in the compartment to prevent the PEPS from working continuously, leading to low battery.

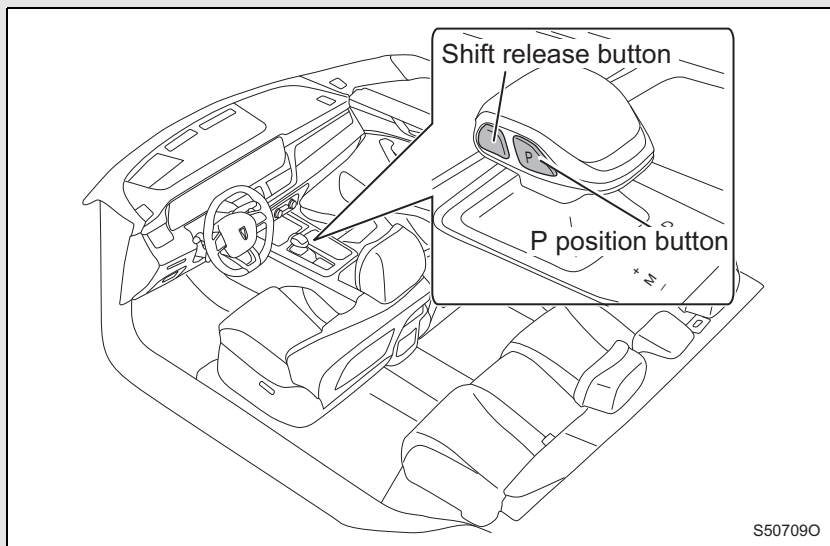
#### ■ During engine start

- Do not run the engine at a high speed when it is cold.
- If the engine is difficult to start or stalls frequently, immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the car.

## 6-2. Driving specifications

### Gearshift control

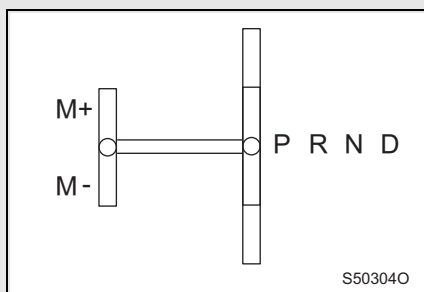
**Choose a gear suitable for driving conditions.**



Gently operate the shift lever and make sure that the gearshifting is correct.

After each gearshifting, release the shift lever to reset it.

#### ■ Moving the shift lever



**Automatic mode:** The right track indicates automatic mode, with two travels in forward and backward directions respectively.

**Manual mode:** The left track indicates manual mode, with a travel in forward and backward directions respectively.



The switch between left and right tracks can be achieved by moving the shift lever left and right, and the manual mode can be entered only when the shift lever is in D position.

Note: If the gears cannot be changed when the shift lever is out of D position in the manual mode, the shift lever should be set to the automatic mode according to the prompt of the instrument cluster.

#### ■ Gear shifting

After the engine is started, shift gears as follows.

- Switch from P to D: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever downward to the first or second travel.
- Switch from P to N: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first travel.
- Switch from P to R: Depress the brake pedal instead of accelerator pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the second travel.
- Switch from N to D: When the car is stationary, operate the shift lever downward to the first or second travel\*.
- Switch from N to R: When the car is stationary and the accelerator pedal is not depressed, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first or second travel\*.

\*: If N gear engagement time is more than 1s, it is required to depress the brake pedal for gear shifting; if N gear engagement time is less than 1s, there is no need to depress the brake pedal for gear shifting.

- Switch from D to N: When the car is stationary, operate the shift lever upward to the first travel. When the car is not stationary, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first travel.
- Switch from D to R: Depress the brake pedal instead of accelerator pedal until the car is stationary, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the second travel.
- Switch from D to M: Operate the shift lever leftwards to the left track.
- Switch from M to D: Operate the shift lever rightwards to the right track.
- Switch from R to N: Operate the shift lever downward to the first travel.
- Switch from R to D: Depress the brake pedal until the car is stationary, and operate the shift lever downward to the second travel.
- Switch from N/D/R to P: Depress the brake pedal until the car is stationary, and press the P position button.

When selecting the gear, ensure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

■ Gear/function

| Gear | Function            |
|------|---------------------|
| P    | Parking             |
| R    | Reverse             |
| N    | Neutral             |
| D    | Drive               |
| M+   | Manual upshifting   |
| M-   | Manual downshifting |

## Gear description

### ► P (Parking) position

P position can be used to lock the transmission and prevent the wheels from rotating.



## WARNING

### ■ Operating the shift lever for the first time

This car adopts electronic shift mechanism, which needs to be operated according to the gear information on the cluster instrument and information display screen and the above gear operation description, and cannot be operated by feeling and consciousness to avoid danger.

### ■ Be sure to set the shift lever to P position and apply the parking brake

It is very dangerous to set the shift lever to P position without applying the parking brake. If P position cannot hold the car still, it will move, thus causing an accident.

### ► R (Reverse) position

When the shift lever is in R position, the car can only move backwards.

### ► N (Neutral) position

When the shift lever is in N position, the transmission is not locked. During parking on a gentle slope, you should depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake; otherwise, the car will slide freely.

### ► D (Drive) position

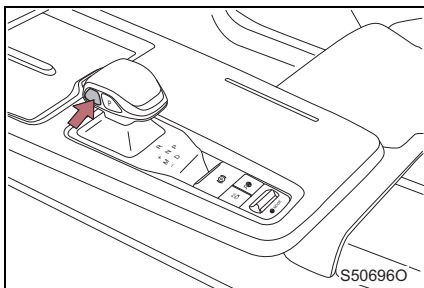
D position is commonly used during driving, which controls the car to move forward.

### ► M (Manual) position

M position indicates manual shift mode. You can shift to M position only from D position. When the shift lever is in D position, you can move the shift lever leftwards to M position. Upshifting or downshifting between M1 and M8 can be carried out by moving the shift lever.

## P position button

### ■ When shifting to P position



You can shift to P position by using the P position button.

When the car is stationary, press the P position button.

When P gear is engaged, the gear information on the instrument cluster is displayed as P.

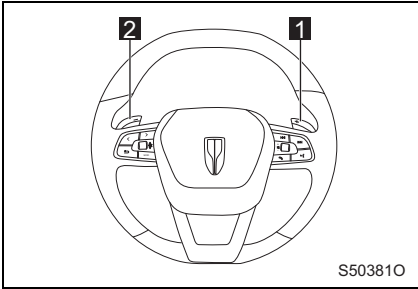
If the vehicle speed is higher than 2 km/h, it will be impossible to shift to P position.

### ■ When shifting to other position from P position

- Press the unlock button while depressing the brake pedal firmly, and operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the gear shifting is prohibited.
- When changing gears, ensure that the gear information on the instrument cluster is displayed as the required gear.
- It is not possible to shift out of P position when the engine stalls, and it is necessary to start the engine first before the operation of shifting out of P position can be performed; When the idle stop-start engine is shut down, if it is in the P position and the instrument cluster prompts to start the engine through the start switch, please shift out of P position after starting the engine.

## Gear shifting in manual mode

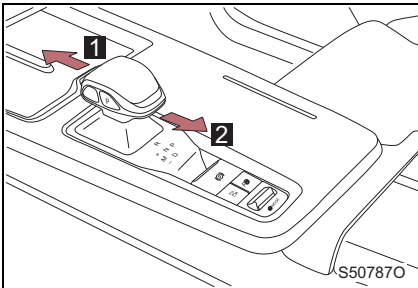
- Carry out upshifting and downshifting by paddle shift on steering wheel\*



- 1 Upshift
- 2 Downshift

The selected gear will be displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display.

- Carry out upshifting and downshifting by shift lever



- 1 Upshift
- 2 Downshift

The selected gear will be displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display.

### ■ Temporary manual mode\*

In D position, enter the temporary manual mode by moving the paddle shift, which can meet the functions of overtaking, uphill with power, engine braking, etc. Press and hold the upshift of paddle shift for 2 s to exit the temporary manual mode or the vehicle automatically exits the temporary manual mode according to the driving conditions.

### ■ If the current gear is D/R and the vehicle speed is lower than 2 km/h, the car will automatically switch to P position under the following conditions

- After engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, the car will automatically switch to P position.
- When the driver unfastens the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and accelerator pedal and opens the door, the car will automatically switch to P position.

### ■ The car is kept in N position for towing under the following conditions

If the current gear is N, after the engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, the car will be kept in N position and powered off.

### ■ Gear limit (in manual mode)

To protect the engine and transmission, gears are limited according to the engine speed during manual gear shifting. Therefore, under certain working conditions, upshifting or downshifting may not be achieved even if the shift lever is operated, or automatic upshifting or downshifting may be achieved without operating the shift lever.

### ■ Hot mode

After the transmission enters the hot mode, the oil temperature rise will be slowed down by reducing the number of times of gear shifting. At this time, the engine speed will increase and the shift smoothness may change slightly.

### ■ When the car is stopped with the shift lever set to M position

Once the car is stopped, the transmission will automatically downshift to M1.



### **WARNING**

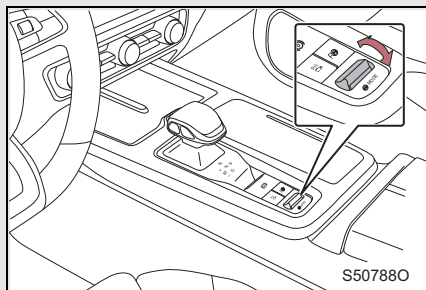
#### ■ During driving on a slippery road

Be careful during sudden acceleration and deceleration; otherwise, it may cause car sideslip or wheel slipping.

# Driving mode

**This car is equipped with a driving mode switching function which can provide different driving modes. In different modes, the car has unique driving performance to meet the driving needs of driver.**

### ■ Driving mode selection



Operate the driving mode selection knob to switch the driving mode circularly, this car is equipped with five driving modes (economic, comfort, sport, snow, off-road).

When switching the driving mode, the currently selected driving mode is displayed synchronously on the instrument cluster.

## Economic mode

In economic mode, the car has good economy and is suitable for driving on common urban pavement.

### ■ Driving characteristics in economic mode

- Power output is gentle.
- The transmission upshifts in advance.
- The drive type for 4WD models is intelligent 2WD mode.
- Steering is heavy.
- For models equipped with continuous damping control shock absorber, the shock absorbers have default rigidity with relatively balanced road feel.

## Comfort mode

In comfort mode, the car has good comfort performance and is applicable to common urban pavement.

### ■ Driving characteristics in comfort mode

- Power output is balanced.

- The transmission gearshift is in the default state.
- The drive type for 4WD models is AWD mode.
- Steering is light.
- For models equipped with continuous damping control shock absorber, the shock absorbers are relatively soft with high comfort.

### Sport mode

In sport mode, the car has good power performance and is applicable to highways or common urban pavement.

#### ■ Driving characteristics in sport mode

- Power output is strong.
- The transmission delays gearshifting.
- The drive type for 4WD models is AWD mode.
- Steering is heavy.
- For models equipped with continuous damping control shock absorber, the shock absorbers are relatively hard with strong road feel.

### Snow mode

The snow mode is applicable to low-adhesion roads such as ice, snow, slippery grass and gravel, etc.

#### ■ Driving characteristics in snow mode

- The power output is stable and gentle, reducing vehicle skidding.
- Gearshifting is gentle when vehicle starts off.
- The drive type for 4WD models is forced to be 4WD mode.
- Steering is balanced.
- For models equipped with continuous damping control shock absorber, the shock absorbers have default rigidity with relatively balanced road feel.

### Off-road mode

The off-road mode is suitable for urban road shoulder and light off-road surface; Off-road mode is not recommended on good pavement to avoid damage to 4WD system; If 4WD system alarm occurs in this mode, stop driving aggressively until the 4WD system fault light goes off.



### ■ Driving characteristics in off-road mode

- Acceleration is extremely gentle.
- Gearshifting is delayed when vehicle starts off.
- The drive type for 4WD models is forced to be 4WD mode.
- Steering is balanced.
- For models equipped with continuous damping control shock absorber, the shock absorbers are relatively hard with strong road feel.
- ESC is turned off.

Note: Considering the driving stability of vehicle, when the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h, it is impossible to switch to off-road mode; In off-road mode, when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h, the driving mode will automatically exit to comfort mode.

---

### ■ Setting conditions of driving mode switching

- The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.
- This system and related systems have no fault.

### ■ Driving mode memory

- After memory function is turned on, three driving modes (economic, comfort, sport) can be memorized.
- Memorization of the last driving mode can be selected through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.162)

### ■ Working state of driving mode system

When selecting the driving mode, the driver can know the current working condition of the driving mode system through the information displayed on the instrument cluster.



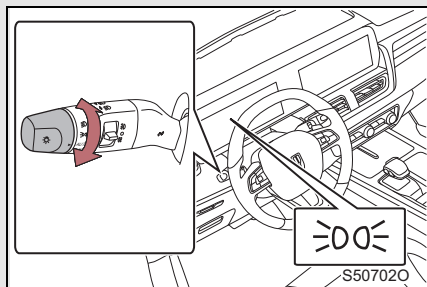
### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions during switch of driving modes

- To ensure driving safety, switch the driving modes during parking or driving at a low speed on good roads.
- The driving mode switching system has self-protection function. If operating conditions for the corresponding driving mode are not met, activating the driving mode may damage the car and affect the driving safety. When the driver switches the driving mode, failure to switch to the target mode may be caused by the self-protection function of the system, which is normal.
- After replacing the spare tire, the four-wheel drive vehicle will not have the four-wheel drive function, and the drive type is still 2WD even if switch to the corresponding driving mode.
- If the driving mode system still cannot work normally when operating conditions for the driving mode are met, immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the car.
- Since the driving mode system cannot replace the driver's judgment on driving environment, the driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.

## 6-3. Operating lamps and wipers

### Headlamp switch



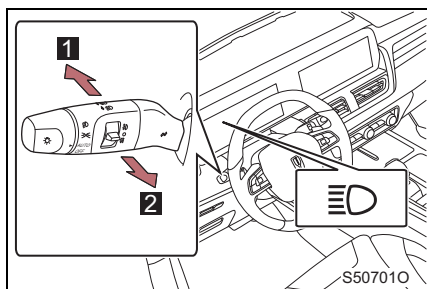
 The headlamp (low beam), position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on.

 The daytime running lamp, rear position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on.

AUTO The headlamp (low beam), position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on and go out automatically.

OFF The daytime running lamp comes on.

### Turning on high beam



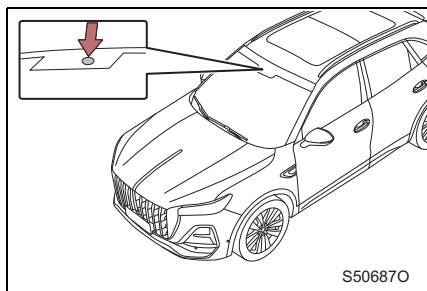
**1** When the headlamp (low beam) is turned on, push the lighting control lever forward to turn on the high beam; pull the lever back to its original position to turn off the high beam.

**2** Pull the lighting control lever backward to turn on the high beam; release the lighting control lever to turn off the high beam.

### ■ Daytime running lamp system

During daytime driving, in order to make it easier for other drivers to see your car, if the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the headlamps are off, the daytime running lamps will be turned on automatically.

### ■ Rain/light sensor



If an object is placed on the sensor or adherent matter on the windshield obscures the sensor, the sensor may work abnormally. The above situations will affect the sensor's detection on ambient light intensity, which may prevent the automatic headlamp and automatic wiper from working properly.

### ■ Automatic headlamp leveling system

The automatic headlamp leveling system can automatically adjust the headlamp beam height according to the number of occupants, the car load and the road environment, so as to ensure that the headlamps can provide a good lighting angle for the driver.

## Alighting lighting system

When the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the low beams are on, if a door is opened after the engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, the low beams will stay on for a period of time and then go out automatically. The turn-on/off and running time of alighting lighting can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.164)

## Boarding lighting system

Unlock the car when the lamplight switch is in the automatic headlamp position. If the automatic headlamp on condition is met at this time, the lamp will be on for a period of time and then go out automatically. The turn-on/off and running time of boarding lighting can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.164)

## Corner lamp

When the car runs at a low speed with the headlamps turned on, if the driver operates the turn signal lamp switch or steering wheel for turning, the corner lamp on the corresponding side will automatically come on to assist the driver in driving. When the R gear is engaged, if the driver operates the turn signal lamp switch or steering wheel for turning, the corner lamps on both sides of the car will come on at the same time to improve the lighting effect of surrounding area during reversing.

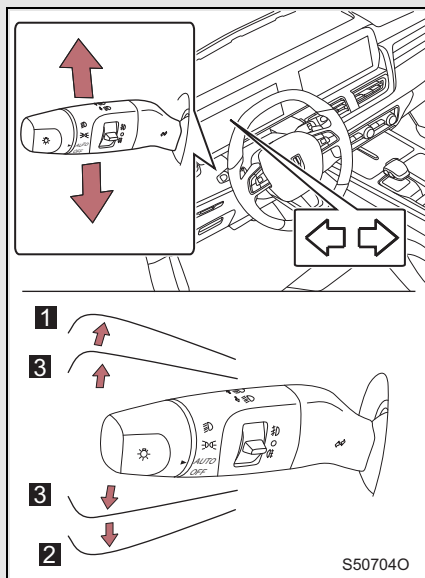
### ■ Lamp fogging

In the event of rain or car wash, the interior of headlights, taillights and turn signal lamps may temporarily mist with water. This is caused by cold condensation of water vapor on the inner surface of the lens when the temperature inside the lamp is significantly higher than the ambient temperature or when the ambient humidity is high (similar to fogging of window glass), and it will frost when the temperature is too low. This is a normal physical phenomenon that does not affect the function or life of the lamps.

When fog appears on the lamps, park the vehicle in a dry, ventilated place with suitable temperature, and the fog or frost will gradually reduce until it disappears; When the vehicle is driving or there is sunlight, the fog will dissipate faster. However, if you see a large amount of water or a large number of water droplets inside the lamp, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the car.

## 6-3. Operating lamps and wipers

### Turn signal lamp control lever



**1** Right turn

**2** Left turn

**3** Comfort flashing

When the control lever is set to non-self-locking position once, the left/right turn signal lamp will flash three times; when the control lever is set to non-self-locking position continuously, the left/right turn signal lamp will flash continuously until the control lever is released.

#### ■ Operating conditions of turn signal lamps

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

#### ■ Control of turn signal lamp and hazard warning lamp

When the turn signal lamp is on, if the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed, the left and right turn signal lamps will flash at the same time; if the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed again, the turn signal lamp will return to the working state.

When the hazard warning lamp is on and the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode, if the turn signal lamp is turned on, the turn signal lamp will work, and the hazard warning lamp will stop working; if the turn signal lamp is turned off, the hazard warning lamp will return to the working state.

# Intelligent high beam control (IHC)\*

**The IHC can automatically turn on and off the high beams according to the judgment of the multifunction camera.**

## Enabling/disabling IHC

The IHC can be enabled and disabled through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.164)

## Operating conditions of IHC

The intelligent high beam control system is enabled and the intelligent high beam indicator lamp  on instrument cluster comes on when engine is started, the headlamp switch is set to AUTO position, the high beam switch lever is set to "High beam off" position and the automatic headlamp on/off control is in the low beam on state.

Conditions for automatically turning on or off high beams

- The high beams will be automatically turned on when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle speed is higher than about 50 km/h.
  - The area in front of the car is dark.
  - There is no vehicle with all headlamps or tail lamps turned on in front.
  - A few street lights are turned on in front of the road.
- The high beams will be automatically turned off when any of the following conditions is met:
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 30 km/h.
  - The area in front of the car is not dark.
  - All headlamps or tail lamps of a vehicle ahead are turned on.
  - Multiple street lights are turned on in front of the road.

- Under the following circumstances, the system may not accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may prevent the IHC from working properly. In this case, switch the high beam and the low beam manually.
  - The front windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
  - The front windshield is broken or damaged.
  - The front view is unclear due to fog, heavy rain, snow and other reasons.
  - The camera is deformed or dirty.
  - The camera temperature is extremely high.
  - The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of headlamps, tail lamps or fog lamps.
  - The headlamps or tail lamps of vehicle ahead are turned off, dirty, discolored or incorrectly aimed, or one of them is turned on.
  - The car runs through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
  - The car runs on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone-paved roads, and gravel roads) frequently or repeatedly.
  - The car makes turns or runs on winding roads frequently or repeatedly.
  - There are highly reflective objects in front of the car, such as signs or mirrors.
  - The back of vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on the truck.
  - The headlamps of the car are damaged, dirty or incorrectly aimed.
  - The headlamps of opposite vehicle are turned off and its fog lamps are turned on.
  - The car is inclined due to flat tire, towing a trailer, etc.
  - The high beam and low beam are switched repeatedly in an abnormal way.
  - There is a lamp similar to the headlamps or tail lamps in front of the car.
  - Wet roads, snow roads, ice roads, etc. are reflective.



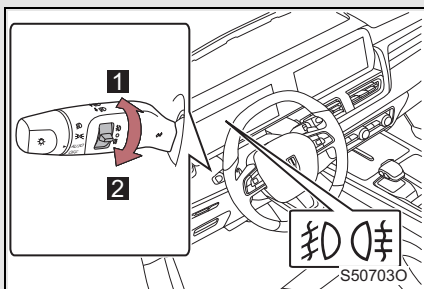
### WARNING

- **Do not rely on the automatic high beam too much. Be sure to drive safely, observe the surrounding environment, and turn on or off the high beam manually if necessary.**



## Fog lamp switch

The fog lamps improve visibility under unfavorable driving conditions, such as rainy days or fogging.



- 1 The front fog lamp comes on
- 2 Both the front and rear fog lamps come on

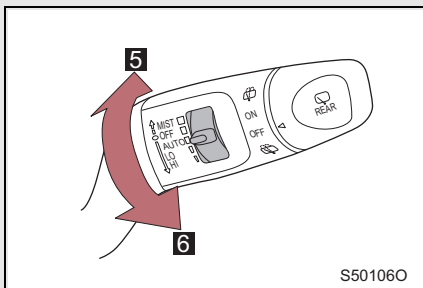
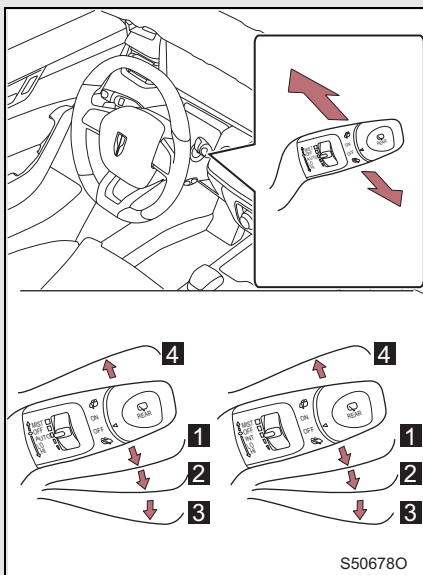
### ■ Operating conditions of fog lamps

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the headlamps are turned on.

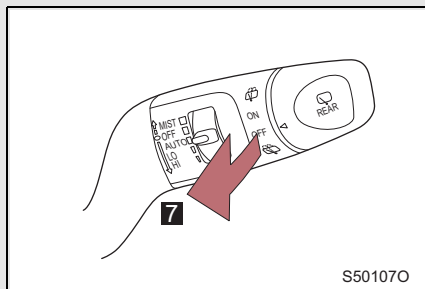
## 6-3. Operating lamps and wipers

### Front windshield wiper & washer

**When the wiper control lever is in AUTO position, the wiper will automatically work if the rain/light sensor detects rain. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to the rainfall and vehicle speed.**



- 1** AUTO position - The wiper speed is automatically adjusted according to the rainfall.
- 2** LO position - The wiper works at a low speed.
- 3** HI position - The wiper works at a high speed.
- 4** MIST position - The wiper works at a low speed for 1 cycle.  
When the engine hood is open, the wiper will not work even if the control lever is pulled.
- 5** The sensitivity on rainfall increases.
- 6** The sensitivity on rainfall decreases.

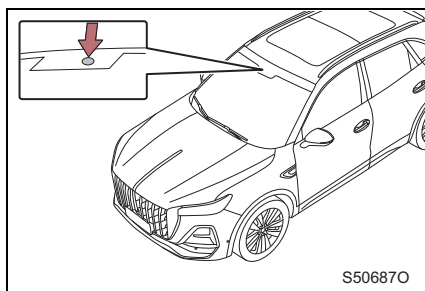


- 7** Cleaning/wiping operation.  
Pull back the wiper control lever to wash the front windshield.

### ■ Operating conditions of front windshield wiper & washer

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the engine hood is closed.

### ■ Rain/light sensor



The rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

### ■ If the windshield washer fluid cannot be sprayed out

Check whether there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.  
Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.

### ■ If the front windshield wiper blade needs to be replaced

- Set the wiper to the service position through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.164)
- Turn off the engine switch and switch the wiper control lever to MIST position within 10 s to set the wiper to the service position.
- When the wiper is in the service position, set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, and move the wiper control lever to any position or disable the wiper service position through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system, so as to disable the service position.



### WARNING

#### ■ Warnings for using front windshield wiper in AUTO mode

In AUTO mode, the front windshield wiper may work unexpectedly if the sensor is touched, the interior rearview mirror is pulled with force or the front windshield is strongly vibrated (for example, the front windshield is knocked with force). Be careful that your fingers or anything else are not pinched by the front windshield wiper.

#### ■ Precautions for use of washer fluid

In cold weather, do not use the washer fluid before the front windshield is warmed. The washer fluid may freeze on the front windshield, resulting in reduced visibility. This may cause an accident that could result in serious injury or even death.

#### ■ Only the windshield washer fluid can be placed in the washer fluid reservoir

It is dangerous to use engine coolant as washer fluid. If it is sprayed onto the windshield, it will stain the windshield, which could obstruct your view and may cause an accident.

#### ■ In freezing weather, always use windshield washer fluid mixed with antifreeze

It is very dangerous to use windshield washer fluid without antifreeze in freezing weather, because it may freeze on the windshield, obstructing your view and thus causing an accident. In addition, before spraying washer fluid, make sure to fully heat the windshield with the defroster.

#### ■ The wiper blade should be replaced in time

The use of worn or dirty wiper blade will greatly reduce the clarity of the front view and affect the driving safety. Therefore, it is necessary to replace the damaged or worn and inoperative wiper blade in time.

**CAUTION****■ When the front windshield is dry**

Do not use the wiper; otherwise, the wiper blade may be damaged.

**■ When the washer fluid cannot be sprayed out of the nozzle**

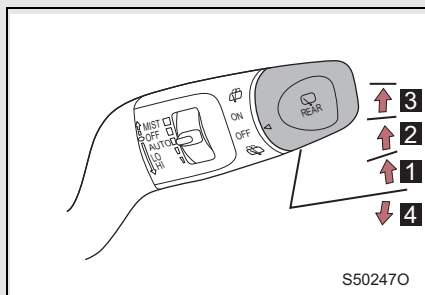
If the wiper control lever is pulled backward and held for a long time, it may cause damage to the washer fluid pump.

**■ When the nozzle is blocked**

Do not use needles or other objects to remove foreign matters without permission; otherwise, the nozzle will be damaged.

# Rear windshield wiper & washer

The wiper and washer can be operated by rotating the rear windshield wiper control lever to different positions.



- 1 Turn off.
- 2 Turn on the rear wiper.
- 3 Cleaning operation.  
After releasing the control lever, the wiper position is automatically reset.
- 4 Cleaning/wiping operation.  
After releasing the control handle, the off position is automatically reset.

### ■ Operating conditions of rear windshield wiper & washer

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the trunk lid is closed.

### ■ Automatic wiping in R gear

When the front windshield wiper is working, the rear windshield wiper is automatically turned on after the R gear is shifted.

### ■ If the windshield washer fluid cannot be sprayed out

Check whether there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.  
Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.

### WARNING

- It is forbidden to use windshield washer fluid with ethanol content exceeding 10%

In a high temperature environment, the windshield washer fluid with ethanol content exceeding 10% will corrode the tail lamps and cause cracks.

**CAUTION****■ When the rear windshield is dry**

Do not use the wiper; otherwise, the wiper blade may be damaged.

**■ When the washer fluid cannot be sprayed out of the nozzle**

If the wiper control lever is rotated to washing position and held for a long time, it may cause damage to the washer fluid pump.

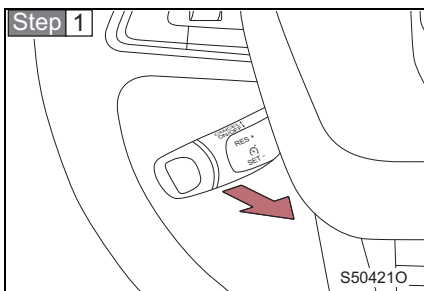
**■ When the nozzle is blocked**

Do not use needles or other objects to remove foreign matters without permission; otherwise, the nozzle will be damaged.

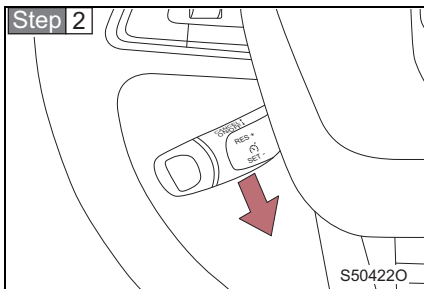
### Cruise control\*

**With cruise control, the vehicle can be maintained at the set speed without using accelerator pedal, it is recommended that the set speed does not exceed the speed limit of actual road.**

#### Cruise control setting



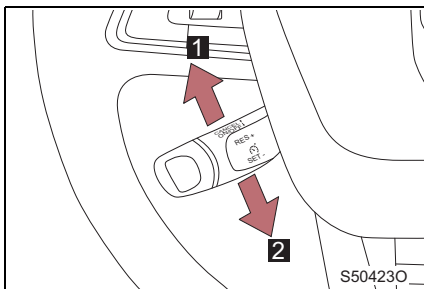
Pull the cruise control lever backward to the "ON/OFF" position, and then release the lever to activate cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, move the cruise control lever downwards to the "SET-" position, and then release the lever, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.



## ■ Adjusting vehicle speed



### 1 Increasing vehicle speed

**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;  
**Move and hold:** Increase vehicle speed continuously, the vehicle speed displayed on instrument cluster multifunction display when releasing the lever is the target vehicle speed.

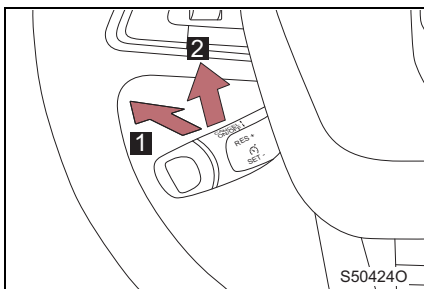
### 2 Reducing vehicle speed

**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;

**Move and hold:** Decrease vehicle speed continuously, the vehicle speed displayed on instrument cluster multifunction display when releasing the lever is the target vehicle speed.

**Note:** If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

## Canceling and resetting cruise control



### 1 Cancel

Push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position.

The following operations will also cancel the cruise control:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Set the shift lever to N position.

### 2 Reset

To reset the cruise control and return to the set speed, move the cruise control lever upward to the "RES+" position and then release it.

---

### ■ Setting conditions of cruise control

- The D gear is engaged.
- The vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h.

### ■ Conditions of suspending cruise control

- When the vehicle needs to overtake, depress the accelerator pedal deeply and briefly to suspend the cruise control and resume cruise control after releasing the accelerator pedal.

### ■ If cruise control indicator lamp flashes

Turn off cruise control function, and then reactivate this system. If cruise control speed can not be set or if the cruise control cancels by itself immediately after activation, there may be a fault in the cruise control system. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.

**WARNING**

■ **To ensure driving safety, it is recommended that the set cruising speed should not exceed 130 km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise control during high-speed driving, so the driver is recommended to drive actively.**

■ **Prevent accidental activation of cruise control**

When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.

■ **When adjusting vehicle speed**

The driver must drive carefully when adjusting vehicle speed by long pressing the cruise control lever.

■ **Situations where cruise control should not be used**

To avoid the possibility of losing control of the car and causing serious injury or death, do not use cruise control under any of the following conditions:

- Traffic jams
- Sharp turns
- Winding roads
- Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow)
- On steep slopes, such as using cruise control when going down a steep slope, the vehicle speed is likely to exceed the target speed of cruise control.

■ **The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the car takes precedence over the cruise control system. Even if the car is in cruise control mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal, the car will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.**

■ **Cruise control system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.**

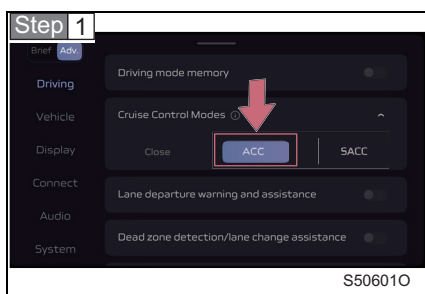
## 6-4. Using driver assistance system

### Adaptive cruise control (ACC)\*

**ACC can comprehensively control the vehicle speed and the distance to the target vehicle in the speed range of 0~140 km/h, thus reducing the burden on the driver and increasing driving comfort. In addition, the system can automatically switch between cruise control and following cruise control depending on whether there is a moving vehicle ahead. Because the actual driving environment is complex, in some cases, the driver can also intervene with the car at any time as needed, and actively control the distance between this car and the target vehicle. If necessary, ACC will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms.**

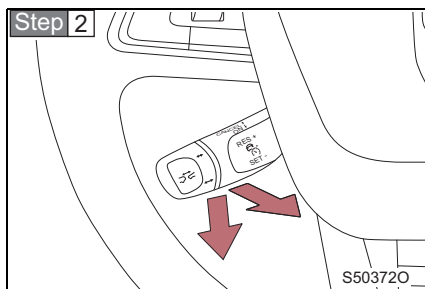
If ACC detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than the set following distance, this car automatically decelerates; if the vehicle ahead accelerates or leaves the lane, this car can accelerate to the set cruising speed.

#### ACC setting



For vehicles with SACC, the ACC can be turned on through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system.

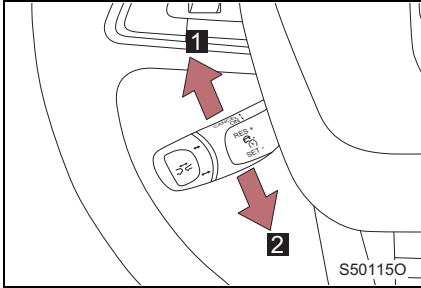
The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactivated.



When ACC white indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, move the cruise control lever down to the "SET-" position or pull the cruise control lever backwards to the "ON/OFF" position, then release the lever. The ACC green indicator lamp

comes on, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.

### ■ Adjusting vehicle speed



#### 1 Increasing vehicle speed

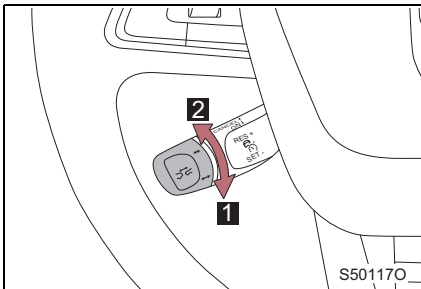
**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;  
**Move and hold:** After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h continuously.

#### 2 Reducing vehicle speed

**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;  
**Move and hold:** After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h continuously.

**Note:** If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

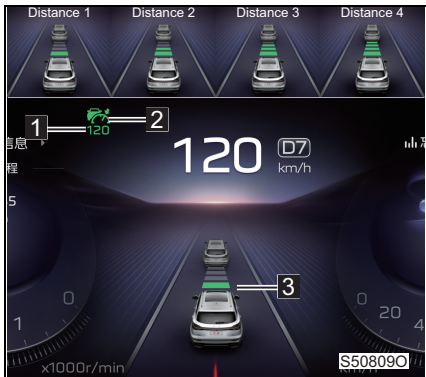
### ■ Setting following distance



#### 1 Increasing following distance

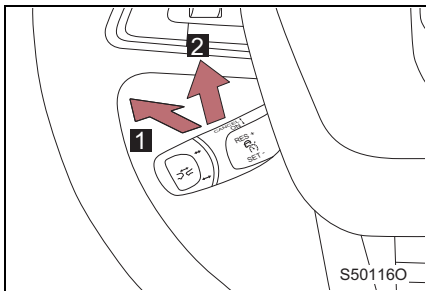
#### 2 Decreasing following distance

The system provides four distance modes. Each time the control lever is moved, one mode is switched.



- 1 Set cruising speed**
- 2 ACC indicator lamp**  
White: The system is enabled, the set conditions are met, and cruise control setting can be carried out.  
Green: The system is working, and the cruise control mode is entered.
- 3 Set following distance**  
The default following distance is "Distance 4".

Canceling and resetting ACC



- 1 Cancel**  
Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel the cruise control.
- 2 Reset**  
To reset the cruise control and return to the set speed, move the control lever upward to the "RES+" position and then release it.

■ Noise during automatic deceleration by ACC

When ACC performs automatic deceleration, noise may be produced, which is normal.

■ Following distance

The following distance is "Distance 4" by default.

■ Setting conditions of cruise control

- The ESC is enabled.
- All doors and the engine hood are closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The D gear is engaged.
- The driver does not depress the brake pedal.

- The ADAS cameras are not blocked and have no fault.
- ACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EMS has no fault.
- AEB/APA is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in snow mode and off-road mode.

#### ■ **Conditions of canceling cruise control**

- Move the cruise control lever to the "CANCEL" position.
- Depress the brake pedal or apply the EPB.
- Open any door or the engine hood.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 1 min.
- Set the shift lever to a position other than D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/APA is activated.
- The driving mode switches to snow mode and off-road mode.
- The relevant function of the system fails.

#### ■ **ACC fault**

When an alarm is given due to ACC fault, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.

#### ■ **After turning off the engine switch**

After turning off the engine switch, the set cruising speed or following distance will be deleted.

#### ■ **Adjusting or calibrating ACC**

Adjust or calibrate the ACC under the following conditions, otherwise the ACC may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



## WARNING

- **To ensure driving safety, it is recommended that the set cruising speed should not exceed 130 km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise control during high-speed driving, so the driver is recommended to drive actively.**
- **Prevent accidental activation of ACC**  
When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.
- **Situations where ACC should not be used**  
To avoid the possibility of losing control of the car and causing serious injury or death, do not use the ACC under any of the following conditions:
  - Traffic jams.
  - Complicated road conditions.
  - Sharp turns.
  - Winding roads.
  - Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow).
  - Steep slopes.
  - There is a stationary obstacle in front of the car.
  - Weather such as snow, rain, ice and dense fog.
  - Poor road lighting at night.
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the car takes precedence over the ACC. Even if the car is in ACC mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal, the car will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **ACC is only a driver assistance system. If necessary, the driver should immediately deactivate the ACC and drive by himself/herself. When using ACC, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions at that time.**



**WARNING**

- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the ACC may not work properly.
- When leaving the driver seat for a long time, be sure to disable the ACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.
- When this car follows the target vehicle for driving, the ACC mainly controls the following distance, and the actual speed of this car may be lower than the set cruising speed.
- If the distance from the vehicle ahead is too close (for example, due to the sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead) in ACC mode, the system will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms through the instrument cluster, and the driver should pay attention to the distance and take over the car at this time.
- When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal for active acceleration, the cruising speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display will flash, which is normal.
- When this car runs in or out of a curve or changes the lane, or when the vehicle ahead is stationary, the ACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle.
- The ACC cannot detect other sides than tail of the car, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects or apply the brake for them. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.
- The ACC has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.
- During driving, the driver always needs to concentrate fully, and should always be ready to take measures and apply the brake.



## **WARNING**

- The driver should adjust the following distance and reasonably set the ACC according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain and snow). The driver needs to ensure that the car can be decelerated to a stop within his/her field of view at all times.
- The ACC can only identify motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) with legal license plates and capable of driving on highways. If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.
- The ACC may not accurately recognize large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.
- The ACC cannot accurately determine the passing width of front lane. Therefore, when the front lane is too narrow and the driver feels unable to pass normally, the driver should immediately deactivate the ACC through braking intervention and control the car.

**WARNING**

- Do not use the ACC on steep slopes. The ACC may not detect vehicles in the same lane, so the driver usually needs to control the acceleration and braking of the car. If the brake is applied, the ACC will be deactivated.
- When a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected, a symbol of vehicle ahead will be displayed on the instrument cluster. If this symbol indication is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the car and driving according to the actual situation.
- If a foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the ACC may not automatically apply the brake, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead, so the driver should keep focused.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!
- Severe extreme weather such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must disable the ACC.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the ACC may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.
- When vehicles in the adjacent lane go into front of the car, if they do not enter the monitoring area, they could not be detected, thus resulting in a response lag of ACC. The driver should pay close attention to movements of vehicles in the adjacent lane and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the ACC may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- When this car follows the target vehicle and stops in ACC mode, it may start suddenly due to the blocked target vehicle, pedestrians passing by, etc. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.



## CAUTION

■ The ACC will control this car at the set following distance from the target vehicle. If the target vehicle decelerates or stops, the ACC will control this car to decelerate or stop automatically.

■ When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for no more than 3 s, this car will start automatically under the control of ACC.

■ When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for more than 3 s but no more than 10 min, a message of resuming cruise control will be shown on the instrument cluster multi-function display of this car, and the driver can resume the ACC by gently depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the cruise control lever to the "RES+" position, thus realizing automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the front traffic conditions, so as to determine whether the car can be safely started.

■ When this car stops for more than 10 min, the ACC will be automatically deactivated.

■ The ACC cannot keep the car braked for a long time. Do not leave the car when the ACC keeps the car stopped. Before leaving the car, be sure to engage the P gear.

■ During driving through a curve with ACC, pay attention to the followings:

- In sharp curves, the ACC may be deactivated or limit the speed.
- On curves, the ACC may respond to vehicles in another lane, have no time to respond to vehicles in the same lane, make the car collide with the front, or lose control of the car; especially during driving in ramps, the ACC may lose its target due to large curve, thus causing acceleration. On curves, the driver must take extra care and always be ready for braking when necessary. During driving on curves, choose a proper speed.

**CAUTION**

■ When this car passes through an intersection with traffic lights while following the vehicle ahead, the driver should pay attention to the change of traffic lights and actively intervene with the car when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.

■ When this car is in dense fog, rain, snow and other weather, or when there are frost and dirt marks in the inspection window area of ADAS cameras, or when this car is running in the direction of the sun (or strong light source), a message reading "Since the IFC is blocked, please clean the windshield" may be displayed on the instrument cluster due to "limited field of view" of camera, and the ACC cannot work at this time.

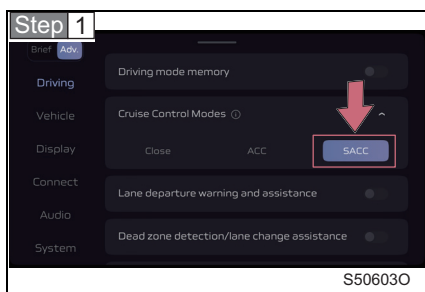
## 6-4. Using driver assistance system

# Super adaptive cruise control (SACC)\*

Based on the ACC, SACC can not only perform cruise and following functions, but also identify the lane markings through the ADAS camera, control the vehicle to drive along the center line of the lane, and improve driving comfort and safety.

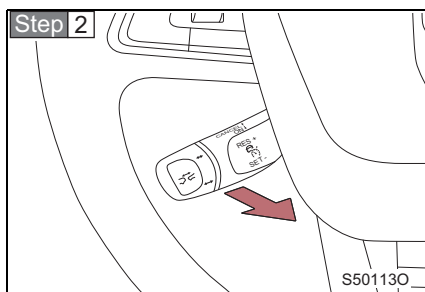
If SACC detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than the set following distance, this car automatically decelerates; if the vehicle ahead accelerates or leaves the lane, this car can accelerate to the set cruising speed.

### SACC setting



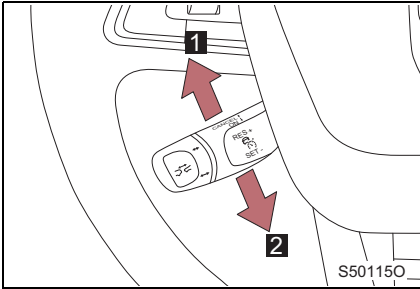
The SACC can be turned on through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system.

The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactivated.



When SACC white indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, continuously pull the cruise control lever backwards twice to the "ON/OFF" position, and then release the lever, SACC green indicator lamp comes on, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.

## ■ Adjusting vehicle speed



### 1 Increasing vehicle speed

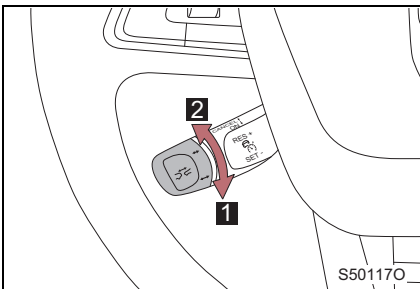
**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;  
**Move and hold:** After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h continuously.

### 2 Reducing vehicle speed

**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;  
**Move and hold:** After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h continuously.

**Note:** If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

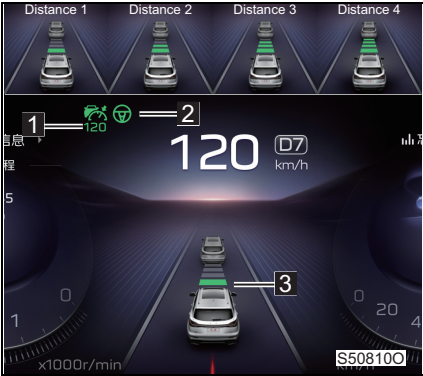
## ■ Setting following distance



### 1 Increasing following distance

### 2 Decreasing following distance

The system provides four distance modes. Each time the control lever is moved, one mode is switched.



- 1 Set cruising speed
- 2 SACC indicator lamp

(Off) (Off): System is in standby and does not meet the setting conditions.

(Off) (white): System turns on and ACC setting can be performed.

(White) (white): System turns on and SACC setting can be performed.

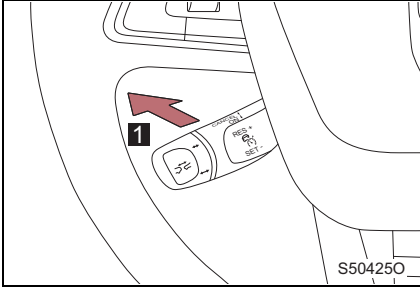
(Off) (green): System operates and enters ACC mode.

(Green) (green): System operates and enters SACC mode.

- 3 Set following distance  
The default following distance is "Distance 4".



## Canceling SACC



Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel the cruise control.

### ■ Switching between SACC and ACC

When ACC is working and SACC setting conditions are met, continuously pull the cruise control lever backwards twice to the "ON/OFF" position to switch to SACC mode.

When SACC is working, if driver operates the steering wheel or turn signal lamp switch, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if camera failed to recognize the lane markings ahead, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if a sharp curve suddenly appears, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if camera detects that the lane markings are too wide or too narrow, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

### ■ Noise during automatic deceleration by SACC

When SACC performs automatic deceleration, noise may be produced, which is normal.

### ■ Following distance

The following distance is "Distance 4" by default.

### ■ Setting conditions of SACC

- The cruise mode is set to SACC in the in-vehicle infotainment system.
- All doors and the engine hood are closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The D gear is engaged.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The ADAS cameras are not blocked and have no fault.
- The lane markings are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.

- SACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EPS/EMS has no fault.
- HDC/AEB/APA is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in snow mode and off-road mode.

### ■ **Conditions of suspending SACC**

- When the vehicle needs to overtake, depress the accelerator pedal deeply and briefly for no more than 1 min and resume SACC after releasing the accelerator pedal.

### ■ **Conditions of canceling SACC**

- Operate the cruise control lever to the "CANCEL" position.
- Depress the brake pedal or apply the EPB.
- Open any door or the engine hood.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- The system judges that both hands are off the steering wheel for a certain period of time.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 1 min.
- Set the shift lever to a position other than D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/HDC/APA is activated.
- The driving mode switches to snow mode and off-road mode.
- The relevant function of the system fails.

### ■ **SACC fault**

When an alarm is given due to SACC fault, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.

### ■ **After turning off the engine switch**

After turning off the engine switch, the set cruising speed or following distance will be deleted.

### ■ **Adjusting or calibrating SACC**

Adjust or calibrate the SACC under the following conditions, otherwise the SACC may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



## WARNING

### ■ Prevent accidental activation of SACC

When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.

### ■ Situations where SACC should not be used

To avoid the possibility of losing control of the car and causing serious injury or death, do not use the SACC under any of the following conditions:

- Traffic jams.
- Complicated road conditions.
- Sharp turns.
- Winding roads.
- Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow).
- Steep slopes.
- There is a stationary obstacle in front of the car.
- Weather such as snow, rain, ice and dense fog.
- Poor road lighting at night.
- The lane markings are not clear.

### ■ The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the car takes precedence over the SACC. Even if the car is in SACC mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or operates the steering wheel, the car will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.

### ■ When driving on a repaired asphalt road or a road with strong light reflection, the vehicle may deviate from the driving lane. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.

### ■ When SACC is working, the driver should hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands to ensure driving safety.



## **WARNING**

- **SACC is only a driver assistance system. If necessary, the driver should immediately deactivate the SACC and drive by himself/herself. When using SACC, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions at that time.**
- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the SACC may not work properly.**
- **When leaving the driver seat for a long time, be sure to disable the SACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.**
- **When this car follows the target vehicle for driving, the SACC mainly controls the following distance, and the actual speed of this car may be lower than the set cruising speed.**
- **If the distance from the vehicle ahead is too close (for example, due to the sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead) in SACC mode, the system will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms through the instrument cluster, and the driver should pay attention to the distance and take over the car at this time.**
- **When the driver takes over steering wheel for a short time or the lane markings disappear for a short time, the steering assist working indicator lamp on the instrument cluster multi-function display will flash, which is normal.**

**WARNING**

- When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal for active acceleration, the cruising speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display will flash, which is normal.
- When this car runs in or out of a curve or changes the lane, or when the vehicle ahead is stationary, the SACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle.
- The SACC cannot detect other sides than tail of the car, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects or apply the brake for them. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.
- The SACC has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.
- During driving, the driver always needs to concentrate fully, and should always be ready to take measures and apply the brake.
- The driver should adjust the following distance and reasonably set the SACC according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain and snow). The driver needs to ensure that the car can be decelerated to a stop within his/her field of view at all times.
- The SACC can only recognize motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) with legal license plates and capable of driving on highways. If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.
- The SACC may not accurately recognize large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.



## **WARNING**

- The SACC cannot accurately determine the passing width of front lane. Therefore, when the front lane is too narrow and the driver feels unable to pass normally, the driver should immediately deactivate the SACC through braking intervention and control the car.
- Do not use the SACC on steep slopes. The SACC may not detect vehicles in the same lane, so the driver usually needs to control the acceleration and braking of the car. If the brake is applied, the SACC will be deactivated.
- When a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected, a symbol of vehicle ahead will be displayed on the instrument cluster. If this symbol indication is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the car and driving according to the actual situation.
- If a foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the SACC may not automatically apply the brake, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead, so the driver should keep focused.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!
- Severe extreme weather such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must disable the SACC.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the SACC may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.

**WARNING**

- When vehicles in the adjacent lane go into front of the car, if they do not enter the monitoring area, they could not be detected, thus resulting in a response lag of SACC. The driver should pay close attention to movements of vehicles in the adjacent lane and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the SACC may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- When this car follows the target vehicle and stops in SACC mode, it may start suddenly due to the blocked target vehicle, pedestrians passing by, etc. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.



## CAUTION

- The SACC will control this car at the set following distance from the target vehicle. If the target vehicle decelerates or stops, the SACC will control this car to decelerate or stop automatically.
- When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for no more than 3 s, this car will start automatically under the control of SACC.
- When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for more than 3 s but no more than 10 min, a message of resuming cruise control will be shown on the instrument cluster multi-function display of this car, and the driver can resume the SACC by gently depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the cruise control lever to the "RES+" position, thus realizing automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the front traffic conditions, so as to determine whether the car can be safely started.
- When this car stops for more than 10 min, the SACC will be automatically deactivated.
- The SACC cannot keep the car braked for a long time. Do not leave the car when the SACC keeps the car stopped. Before leaving the car, be sure to engage the P gear.
- During driving through a curve with SACC, pay attention to the followings:
  - In sharp curves, the SACC may be deactivated or limit the speed.
  - On curves, the SACC may respond to vehicles in another lane, have no time to respond to vehicles in the same lane, make the car collide with the front, or lose control of the car; especially during driving in ramps, the SACC may lose its target due to large curve, thus causing acceleration. On curves, the driver must take extra care and always be ready for braking when necessary. During driving on curves, choose a proper speed.
  - In a curve, too small road radius may affect the judgment of SACC on the lane markings. Drive with caution on curves.



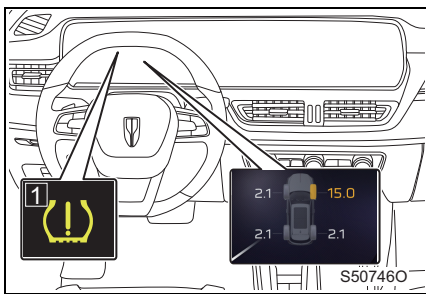
**CAUTION**

- When this car passes through an intersection with traffic lights while following the vehicle ahead, the driver should pay attention to the change of traffic lights and actively intervene with the car when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.
- When this car is in dense fog, rain, snow and other weather, or when there are frost and dirt marks in the inspection window area of ADAS cameras, or when this car is running in the direction of the sun (or strong light source), a message reading "Since the IFC is blocked, please clean the windshield" may be displayed on the instrument cluster due to "limited field of view" of camera, and the SACC cannot work at this time.

6-4. Using driver assistance system

# Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The TPMS can monitor and check the tire pressure, and automatically issue an alarm when the tire pressure is lower than the limit.



- 1 Tire pressure abnormal/ system fault warning lamp
- 2 Tire pressure information

## Operating condition of system

| Car status                | Alarm                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tire pressure is abnormal | The system fault warning lamp makes an alarm                                                                    |
| The TPMS is not working   | The system fault warning lamp comes on, and at the same time, the TPMS is indicated invalid in the form of text |

### Tire pressure sensor matching

After wheel replacement or tire rotation, it is necessary to configure the TPMS. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

**WARNING****■ Precautions for TPMS**

- This system cannot prevent tire deflation and burst. It is mainly used to give an alarm when it monitors that the tire pressure is lower than a set value.
- In winter, the tire pressure should be adjusted in time. Because the atmospheric temperature drops in winter, the tire pressure may decrease or fall below the alarm value. When the tire pressure decreases below the alarm value, an alarm will be issued.

**■ Situation in which TPMS cannot work properly**

This system can make judgments based on subtle changes in tires. However, it sometimes cannot work properly under the following conditions.

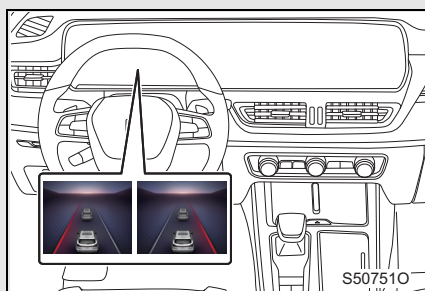
- Four tires are not of the same size, same manufacturer, same brand and the same pattern, or tires with obviously different wear degrees are installed (the same for winter tires).
- Emergency tires, snow tires and tire chains are used.
- Tires with pressure significantly higher than the specified value are installed, or tire pressure drops rapidly due to tire burst (rupture).

## 6-4. Using driver assistance system

### Lane departure warning/lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA)\*

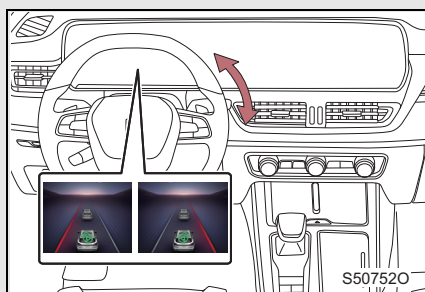
The LDW/LKA can detect the driver's status and the car's driving status when the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h. When the LDW/LKA judges that the driver's non-subjective intention (such as chatting, distraction, operating multimedia display, etc.) causes the car to depart from the lane, it will give a warning or alarm plus correction prompt to prevent danger and traffic violation.

#### ■ Lane departure warning (LDW)



When the system judges that the car departs from the lane, the line on the corresponding side turns red and flashes, and a warning sound is issued at the same time.

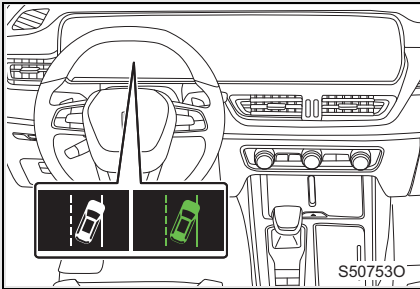
#### ■ Lane keeping assist (LKA)



When the system judges that the car departs from the lane, the line on the corresponding side turns red and flashes, and at the same time, a warning sound is issued and the steering wheel corrects it automatically.

### ■ LDW/LKA settings

The LDW/LKA can be turned on/off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. After the system is turned on, the alarm mode can be selected as alarm only or alarm + correction and the LDW sensitivity can be set at the same time. (See P.162)



When the system is turned on, the LKA indicator lamp (white) on the instrument cluster comes on. When the system is turned off, the indicator lamp goes out.

When the system is turned on, the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, and the system recognizes a valid lane marking, the LKA indicator lamp (green) on the instrument cluster comes on.

### ■ Operating conditions of LDW/LKA:

- The vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- The lane markings are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- The system cameras are not blocked.

### ■ The system will suppress the alarm even if the car departs from the lane under the following conditions:

- The driver turns the steering wheel to pass a bend.
- The car keeps driving on the lane marking.
- Within 3 s after the previous alarm is issued.
- The turn signal lamp switch is turned on or returns not more than 3 s.

### ■ The system will not make corrections automatically even if the car departs from the lane under the following conditions:

- The driver operates the turn signal lamps and steering wheel.
- The lane marking on one side or both sides disappear.

■ **The LDW/LKA may not work properly under the following conditions:**

- Cameras are blocked by snow, ice, dust or stains on the front windshield.
- The weather causes low visibility, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- The road has a narrow width or the bend curvature is too large.
- The line of sight of the system cameras is blocked.
- When driving towards strong light.
- Lane marking conditions are complex, for example, lane marking diverging/merging, construction area, etc.
- Misrecognition may be caused when there are bridge cables or tree shadows on the road surface.
- When the light is dim or the lane markings are blurred at night.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- The lane markings do not meet the requirements of national standards.
- The brightness of the external environment of the car suddenly changes, for example, entering a tunnel.

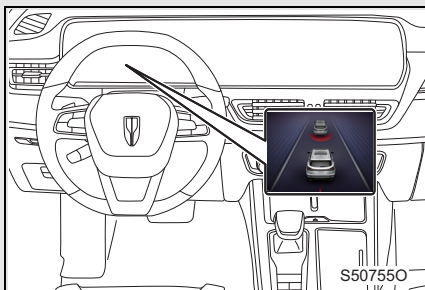
■ **When the ADAS camera unit or front windshield are replaced or the four-wheel alignment is performed, the system needs to be recalibrated, otherwise it will not work normally. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

**WARNING**

- The LDW/LKA is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the vehicle takes precedence over the LDW/LKA. The driver must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- Stop using the system when road and environmental factors may cause the system to not work properly.
- In order to avoid disturbing the driver, the system will not give an alarm when the activation conditions of the LDW/LKA are not met.
- The LDW/LKA may misrecognize other lanes when it is incorrectly calibrated, and even cause accidents.
- The LDW/LKA can recognize lane markings and curbs with certain contrast. However, it may not recognize lane markings and curbs accurately or even cannot recognize them if they are blurred or stained, and may make false recognition of some wheel traces, watermarks or shadows with large color difference and contrast on the road.

### Forward collision warning (FCW)\*

The FCW system can automatically judge the collision risk level through the relative distance, relative speed and relative acceleration of the car to the target vehicle within the speed range of 8~120 km/h. If the conditions are met, the system will give an alarm.

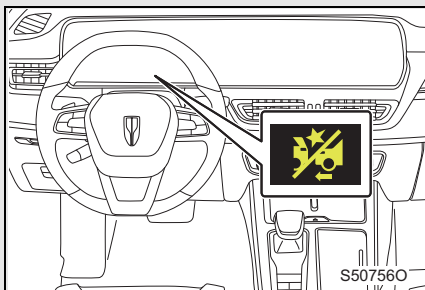


When the system judges that collision may occur, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and issues an audible alarm.

For the target vehicle, when the collision risk level goes up, the system will make a braking reminder similar to the snub braking effect.

#### ■ Turning on/off FCW

The FCW can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. It is turned on by default. (See P.163)



When the system is turned off, the instrument cluster will display the FCW OFF indicator lamp.

#### ■ Adjusting or calibrating FCW

Adjust or calibrate the FCW under the following conditions, otherwise the FCW may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera units or radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.



- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



## WARNING

- To ensure driving safety, occupants in the car must fasten their seat belts!
- The FCW is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the FCW too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The FCW only gives an early warning of collision danger. The driver must control the brake pedal or steering wheel to prevent collision.
- The FCW may not be able to recognize modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- As the FCW obtains information by recognizing the rear of other vehicles, it will not give an alarm to oncoming vehicles and front crossing vehicles.
- In complex traffic conditions, the FCW may not recognize vehicles timely, resulting in the lag of alarms.
- On curved roads, hill roads or extremely bumpy roads, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead. The driver must drive carefully.
- The FCW system is a warning system. It cannot detect other vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of a vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of a vehicle is strange (e.g., an overloaded vehicle carrying trees), the rear of a vehicle is seriously damaged, etc.
- The FCW may not recognize narrow objects such as pedestrian or bicycle.
- When rain, snow, ice, fog or dust blocks the sensors, the performance of system may degrade or fail. The driver must drive carefully.
- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the FCW may degrade or fail.
- If cameras are shifted due to collision, the FCW may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the FCW by driver in time.



## WARNING

- **Never use an FCW that is incorrectly calibrated.**
- **For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the FCW may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **If the chassis of the preceding vehicle is high, or the goods protrude from the rear of the preceding vehicle, please pay attention to the danger that may occur.**
- **The FCW may not recognize targets such as cyclist.**
- **The front bumper must not be painted, modified or blocked by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!**
- **Severe extreme weather such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must use the FCW carefully.**
- **If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the FCW may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.**
- **Do not use any forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.**

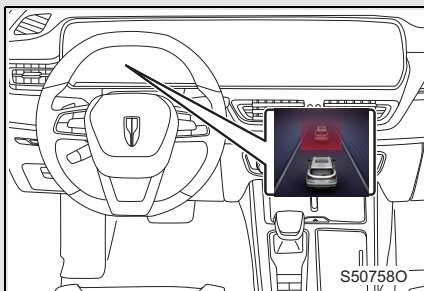


## CAUTION

- **In order to avoid disturbing the driver by false alarms, the alarm may not be given under the following conditions:**
  - The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
  - Within 3 s after the previous alarm is issued.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.

# Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)\*

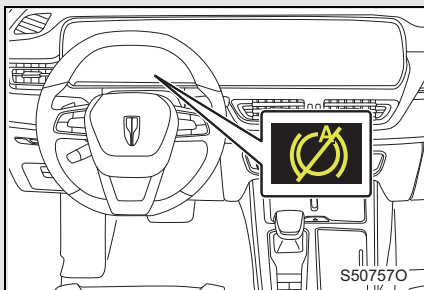
The operating range of the AEB system is approximately 8 km/h~90 km/h, when the vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle in case of emergency, if the driver fails to perform emergency braking or emergency steering to avoid danger in time, the system will assist the driver in applying brake to avoid or reduce the collision injury.



When the AEB works, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and an audible alarm is issued.

### ■ Turning on/off AEB

The AEB can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.163)



When the system is turned off, the instrument cluster will display the AEB OFF indicator lamp.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating AEB

Adjust or calibrate the AEB under the following conditions, otherwise the AEB may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera units or radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.

- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### **WARNING**

- To ensure driving safety, occupants in the car must fasten their seat belts.
- The AEB is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the AEB too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The AEB may not be able to recognize modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- On curved roads, hill roads or extremely bumpy roads, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead. The driver must drive carefully.
- The AEB may not recognize targets such as cyclist.
- The braking function of the AEB system will not be activated when the ESC is off or faulty.
- If there is heavy snow or rain, the system may not work properly.
- For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the AEB may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.
- If the vehicle is towing another vehicle or a trailer, turn off the AEB. When brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.
- If the chassis of the preceding vehicle is high, or the goods protrude from the rear of the preceding vehicle, please pay attention to the danger that may occur.
- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of AEB may degrade or fail.
- If cameras are shifted due to collision, the AEB may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the AEB by driver in time.
- Never use an AEB that is incorrectly calibrated.
- As the AEB obtains information by recognizing the rear of other vehicles, it will not give an alarm to oncoming vehicles and front crossing vehicles.

**WARNING**

- The AEB is an auxiliary system. It cannot detect other vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of a vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of a vehicle is strange (e.g., an overloaded vehicle carrying trees), the rear of a vehicle is seriously damaged, etc.
- When the vehicle is driving in a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately judge the state of stationary objects in the driving direction of the vehicle, so the system may not carry out autonomous emergency braking assistance.
- The AEB does not always help the driver in all environments. Therefore, the driver shall not rely on the system completely, and must concentrate on observing road conditions to ensure driving safety.
- The AEB is an active auxiliary safety system. However, it cannot completely guarantee collision avoidance with vehicles in front under any conditions. The driver is responsible for driving and avoiding dangerous conditions. In case of emergency, the driver shall brake as soon as possible.
- If the AEB is activated, the driver should take over the car control in time after the car stops, so as to avoid the car from restarting which may cause slipping of the car.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or blocked by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!
- Severe extreme weather such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must use the AEB carefully.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the AEB may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- Do not use any forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.



## CAUTION

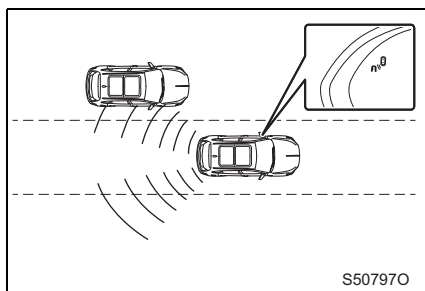
- **In order to avoid disturbing the driver by false alarms, the brake will not be triggered under the following conditions:**
  - The vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
  - Within 20 s after the previous alarm is issued.
- **When the AEB works, AEB will be deactivated if any of the following conditions are met:**
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.
  - The vehicle speed reduces below the threshold of 60 km/h.
- **When any of the following conditions are met, the AEB will not be triggered, which is intended to allow the driver to control the vehicle himself/herself without disturbing the driver:**
  - ESC/TCS/ABS function is activated.
  - The R gear is engaged.
  - Any door is not closed.
  - The engine hood is not closed.
  - The driver unfastens the seat belt.
  - The automatic parking function is turned on.
  - The previous alarm is issued not more than 20 s.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 8 km/h.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.

## 6-4. Using driver assistance system

### Blind spot detection (BSD)\*

The system has the functions of blind spot detection, lane change assistance, rear cross traffic alert and rear collision warning to assist the driver in driving.

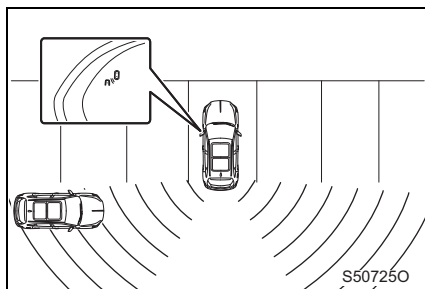
#### Blind spot detection and lane change assistance



When the car is set to a gear other than R and the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, if a rear side vehicle within the blind spot of 7 m behind the vehicle or the interval of 7~70 m meets the collision condition, the warning indicator lamp on the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on.

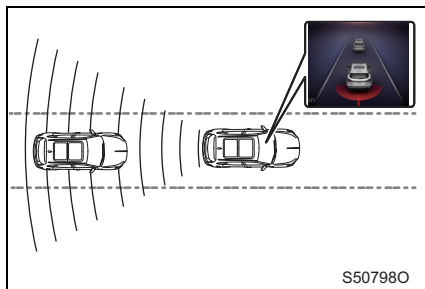
If the turn signal lamp switch on the corresponding side is turned on at this time, the warning indicator lamp flashes and a warning sound is issued at the same time, prompting the driver that there is danger in changing lanes at this time.

#### Rear cross traffic alert



When the car is set to R gear and the vehicle speed is 0~10 km/h, if there are targets such as transverse running vehicle, electric motorcycle and bicycle etc. within 30 m in transverse direction and 7 m in longitudinal direction behind the car, the indicator lamp on the rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on, prompting the driver that it may be dangerous to reverse at this time.

### Rear collision warning



When the car is set to a gear other than R, the vehicle speed is greater than 0 km/h and the vehicle doors are locked, if a rear vehicle is within 55 m from the car, the sensors will monitor the driving state of the following vehicle behind to judge the danger level of rear-end collision. According to this danger level, the instrument cluster will display alarm information, and at the same time the hazard warning lamp will flash, alerting the driver and the rear vehicle to the risk of collision.

### Turning on/off BSD

Each function of the BSD can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.162)

■ **The BSD and lane change assistance systems may not give an alarm or may give a delayed alarm under the following conditions:**

- The car is driving on a steep slope.
- The car is running at the mountain top or on a hill road.
- There is a height difference between the driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- The turning radius is small.
- The car drives on snow-covered roads for a long time.
- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.

■ **The BSD and lane change assistance systems may advance the alarm or expand the alarm range under the following conditions**

- If two lanes are too narrow, an alarm will occur in the other lane.
- The car drives on roads with fixed obstacles near the side of the car for a long time (e.g., tunnel wall, cement barrier of viaduct, metal billboard, etc.).



- **The rear cross traffic alert may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - The car is parked at an oblique angle.
  - The reversing speed exceeds 10 km/h.
  - A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
  - The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.
  - Another vehicle directly approaches this vehicle from the rear.
- **The rear collision warning system may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
  - The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.



## CAUTION

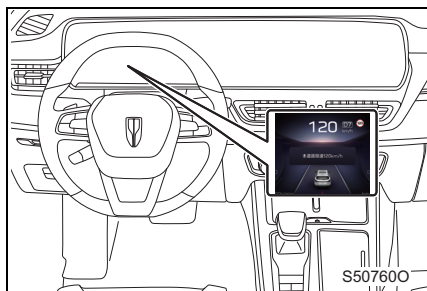
- **Be careful not to impact the rear bumper during parking. Otherwise, the sensors in the bumper may be shifted or damaged, which may cause the system to shut down automatically or affect the system function.**
- **In order to ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and not be covered by other objects.**
- **Only the paint approved by our company can be applied to the rear bumper. Other kinds of paint may cause limited functions or failure of the BSD.**
- **If the BSD does not work normally, please turn off it immediately, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for repair.**
- **After the BSD is repaired, it needs to be calibrated. For details, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
- **The BSD is only an auxiliary reminder, and cannot completely avoid vehicle collision in blind spots. Before changing lanes, please check the rearview mirrors, give a glance to rear areas and use the turn signal lamps.**
- **Under special working conditions such as wet weather and high vehicle speed, the BSD may give false alarms or miss alarms, which are normal phenomena.**
- **When the rear BSD radar is blocked, the BSD will not work. Therefore, it needs to be cleaned in time.**
- **As the BSD is limited by physical laws and working conditions, it may not correctly recognize traffic conditions under some driving conditions. For example:**
  - In a sharp turn lane.
  - In a lane with varying width.
  - On a bumpy road in the mountain.
  - In bad weather.
  - Near some special buildings on the roadside, such as high or scattered highway guardrail.

 **WARNING**

- **The BSD is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car. The BSD is only an auxiliary reminder. The driver must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **Turn off the radar detection system when there is a trailer or some accessories (e.g., bicycle bracket) are installed at the rear. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked, resulting in abnormal operation of the system.**
- **The BSD can detect targets such as car, electric motorcycle and bicycle etc. If target vehicles have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians, animals or other objects cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.**
- **The BSD adopts intelligent technologies conforming to the laws of physics, and has some system limitations, so it can only work within the limits of the system. Therefore, the driver should concentrate on observing road and traffic conditions to prevent accidents.**
  - Be sure to adjust the vehicle speed and the safe distance from the vehicle in front according to current visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.
  - Always hold the steering wheel with both hands when driving, and be ready to turn it at any time.
  - Be sure to pay attention to the indicator lamps on exterior rearview mirrors and the information displayed on the multifunction display screen of the instrument cluster, and make correct control according to the indications.
  - The BSD may react to specific roadside buildings (e.g., high or skewed guardrail) and thus give false alarms.
  - Always pay attention to the road conditions and surrounding conditions of the car.
  - Do not use the BSD when the sensors are dirty or damaged, in which case the functions of the BSD may be affected.
  - When the sun shines directly, the field of view of exterior rearview mirrors may be limited.
  - During driving, be sure to strictly follow the instructions about warning lamps/indicator lamps and related text information. Otherwise, accidents are prone to occurring and serious personal injuries will be caused.

### Traffic sign recognition (TSR)\*

**TSR can accurately recognize the speed limit sign and speed limit release sign ahead during the driving.**



When the system recognizes the speed limit sign, if the vehicle speed is less than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster will only display the current speed limit requirement through the indicator lamp; and if the vehicle speed is more than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster will remind the driver of overspeed by sound/icon/text message, etc.

When the system recognizes the speed limit release sign, the indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will go out and the speed limit reminder will be canceled.

#### Turning on/off TSR

TSR can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.163)

#### ■ Under the following conditions, the system will cancel the speed limit alarm:

- The vehicle has passed the speed limit sign for a certain distance.
- The turn signal lamp is turned on and a turn is made.
- A U-turn is made at low speed.

#### ■ Adjusting or calibrating TSR

Adjust or calibrate the TSR under the following conditions, otherwise the TSR may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The four wheels are aligned.

- The ADAS camera unit is replaced.

For calibration, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



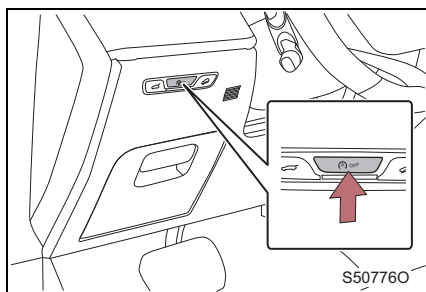
## **WARNING**

- The TSR is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the TSR too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- If there is heavy snow or rain, the system may not work properly.
- For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the TSR may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.
- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of TSR may degrade or fail.
- If cameras are shifted due to collision, the TSR may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the TSR by driver in time.
- When the sign is not in a style or placed at a position that conforms to regulations, the system will fail to recognize it normally.

### Idle stop-start system\*

The idle stop-start system controls the engine to start and stop at idle speed according to driving operations and system requirements during short-time stop.

#### Turning on/off idle stop-start system



Press the idle stop-start off button, so the idle start-stop off indicator lamps on the cluster instrument comes on, and the idle stop-start system is turned off; press the idle stop-start off button again, so the indicator lamp goes out, and the idle stop-start system is turned on.

- If the idle stop-start off button is pressed during parking
  - When the engine is shut down through the idle stop-start system, pressing the idle stop-start off button will restart the engine. At the same time, the idle stop-start system is turned off, and the idle stop-start off indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.
  - When the idle stop-start system is off, pressing the idle stop-start off button will resume the idle stop-start system, but this time the engine will not be shut down.

#### Working process of idle stop-start system

- Stopping the engine
  - When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and keeps depressing the brake pedal, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.
  - When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, then moves the shift lever from D to N, and keeps depressing the brake pedal, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.
  - When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and moves the shift lever from D to P, the

engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.

- When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and the EPB/AUTO HOLD works, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.

#### ■ Starting the engine

- When the car stops in D/N gear, if the driver keeps depressing the brake pedal and then releases the brake pedal, the engine will start automatically.
- When the car stops in P gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again, the engine will start automatically.
- When the EPB/AUTO HOLD is activated, if the driver depresses the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again, the engine will start automatically.
- When the shift lever is moved to R, the engine will start automatically.
- When the steering wheel is turned, the engine may start automatically.
- When the A/C or the front windshield defrosting/defogging function is activated, the engine will start automatically.

#### Idle stop-start indicator lamp

- When the idle stop-start on indicator lamp (green) of the instrument cluster comes on, it indicates that the idle stop-start system is turned on and working.
- When the idle stop-start limited indicator lamp (white) of the instrument cluster comes on, it indicates that the idle stop-start system is turned on but does not meet the operating conditions.
- When the idle stop-start fault indicator lamp (yellow) of the instrument cluster comes on, it indicates that the idle stop-start system is faulty.

#### Operating conditions of idle stop-start system

##### ■ Operating conditions of idle stop-start system

- Preconditions for automatic shutdown of engine

The engine automatically stops when all the following conditions are met:

- The car has no fault related to the idle stop-start system.
- The idle stop-start system is enabled.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The engine hood is closed.

- The A/C comfort system meets the requirements.
- Auto parking assist does not intervene.
- The battery has good performance and sufficient charge.
- The coolant temperature meets the requirements.
- The current operating conditions of the car meet the set conditions of the idle stop-start system.
- The shift lever is not set to R.
- The steering wheel angle should not be too large.
- The driving mode is set to "Comfort" or "Economic".

● Preconditions for automatic start of engine

The engine starts automatically when all the following conditions are met:

- The car has no fault related to the idle stop-start system.
  - The driver's door is closed.
  - The engine hood is closed.
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The engine restarts automatically without driver operation (any of the conditions are met)
- The battery status does not meet the conditions.
  - The coolant temperature does not meet the conditions.
  - The brake vacuum is insufficient.
  - The A/C does not meet the operating conditions.



**WARNING**

■ **Operation of idle stop-start system**

- Do not leave the car when the idle stop-start system stops the engine. Accidents may occur due to the automatic start function of the engine.
  - When the car is placed in a poorly ventilated place, do not use the idle stop-start system to stop the engine. Due to the automatic start function of the engine, the engine may restart and cause exhaust to accumulate and enter the car, which may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.
  - In order to ensure safety, it is necessary to ensure that the doors are closed, the driver's seat belt is fastened, the engine hood is closed, and the steering wheel is aligned. Otherwise, the idle stop-start system cannot be activated, and automatic stop or automatic start of the engine cannot be achieved.
  - In order to prevent frequent start and stop of the engine under extreme congestion, after the engine stops, the vehicle speed needs to be greater than 3 km/h to activate the idle stop-start system again; after the shift lever is set to D position for the first time from R position, the vehicle speed needs to be greater than 10 km/h to activate the idle stop-start system.
  - In the idle stop-start state, if the idle stop-start system detects that the relevant conditions are not met, even if the driver does not depress the brake pedal, the engine may start automatically.
  - In the idle stop-start state, if the driver unfastens the seat belt or opens the door, and triggers the engine start, at this time, the instrument panel will prompt that the engine needs to be started manually. At this time, the driver needs to start the engine manually through the engine switch.
- **To ensure the drivability and comfort of the car and the protection of various systems, there are many preconditions for activating the idle stop-start system. For example, low battery charge or low temperature, improper A/C, low engine coolant temperature, high altitude, non-comfort or economic driving mode, steep slope, low braking vacuum, high transmission temperature, related system failure, etc. will disable the idle stop-start system. After the car is braked and stopped, if the engine cannot be stopped due to the above conditions, the idle stop-start limited indicator lamp of the instrument cluster will come on. Therefore, it is not necessary to care whether the engine is stopped during driving, as the idle stop-start system can make decisions by considering various factors such as drivability, safety and comfort.**



## CAUTION

- **After the engine stops automatically, if the engine switch is pressed, the engine cannot start at this time.**
- **When the car is in the idle stop-start state, the idle stop-start system is disabled if the following conditions occur. At this time, if the driver triggers the engine start conditions, the instrument cluster will remind the driver to start the engine manually.**
  - The engine hood is opened or the transmission sends a no-start signal.
  - The seat belt is unfastened or the door is opened.
  - The seat belt is not fastened after being unfastened for a period of time or the door is not closed after being opened for a period of time.
- **The idle stop-start system will be prohibited from entering the active state when the A/C is in any of the following states:**
  - The A/C is in defrost/defog state.
  - The cabin temperature does not reach the target temperature range for comfort.
  - The ambient temperature is too high or too low.
- **When the transmission sends the start-stop prohibited signal, the idle stop-start system will be prohibited from entering the active state.**
  - The risk of car darting caused by the engaged drive chains can be prevented during engine start after shutdown.
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car. The idle stop-start system is only an driver assistance system. The driver must drive carefully according to the actual road conditions, have control on the car all the time and take full responsibility for the car.**

# Driver assistance system

### Electronic stability control (ESC)

The related functions integrated in the ESC vary slightly according to different vehicle models. In order to improve the driving safety and performance of the car, the following functions will work automatically according to various driving conditions. However, remember that these functions are only for auxiliary purpose. Do not rely on them too much during driving.

#### ■ Antilock brake system (ABS)

This system can prevent sideslip or pulling to one side of the car due to locked wheels during driving on slippery roads or in emergency braking.

#### ■ Electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD)

This system can execute dynamic proportional distribution of brake force on front and rear wheels according to the change of car load, road conditions and brake force, so as to improve the braking stability and maneuverability of the car.

#### ■ Traction control system (TCS)

This system can prevent the driving wheels from slipping and ensures the acceleration performance of the vehicle when the vehicle starts or the vehicle accelerates on a slippery road.

#### ■ Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

This system can execute the braking force compensation when the brake pedal is depressed quickly, so as to effectively increase the brake force.

#### ■ Hydraulic brake booster (HBB)

This system can execute the brakeforce compensation when the vacuum degree of braking system is insufficient, so as to effectively increase the brake force.

#### ■ Hill descent control (HDC)

When the vehicle is going downhill and the speed is between 3-35 km/h, apply corresponding brake force to the wheels to maintain a stable speed when driving downhill.

HDC can be set to on and off through the HDC button.

### ■ Hill hold control (HHC)

When the car is started on the slope, in a period of time after the driver moves the foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, this function will properly maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the car from slipping.

### ■ Direct torque control (DTC)

This system can balance the direct torque of the engine for braking by slightly increasing the engine torque, so as to avoid excessive wheel slip and maintain the stability and maneuverability of the car while the car does not accelerate.

### ■ Electronic stability control (ESC)

This system can help the driver control sideslip during sudden turning or turning on a slippery road, so as to ensure the correct driving track of the car.

### ■ Controlled deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go (CDD-S)\*

This system can assist the ACC in achieving the ACC deceleration control of the car.

### ■ Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When the EPB switch is pulled up for a long time, the car actively enters the deceleration state.

### ■ AUTO HOLD

When the car is stationary, the AUTO HOLD applies the parking brake through the system and maintains this state for a short time, and then the EPB performs parking. This function can be turned off/on by a button.

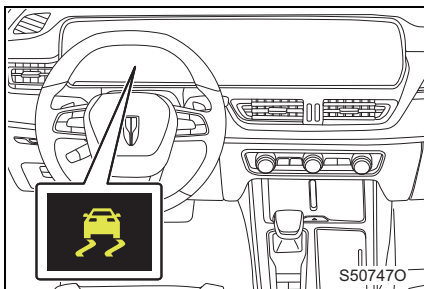
### ■ Automatic brake prefill (ABP)

According to the request of the relevant control unit, the ESC actively pre-pressurizes the braking system to improve the response speed to braking.

### **Electric power steering (EPS)**

This system can use a motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.

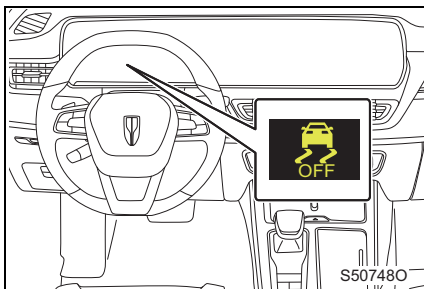
## When TCS/ESC works



If the car skids or the driving wheels idle, the indicator lamp flashes to indicate that the TCS/ESC is working.

## Disable ESC

If the car is trapped in snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power output from the engine to the wheels. When the system is disabled, it is useful for the car to move back and forth and get out of the trap.



The ESC can be turned on and off in the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. When it is turned off, the ESC off indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on. (See P.163)

### ■ Automatic response of ESC

If the engine is restarted after the ESC is turned off or the vehicle speed exceeds 110 km/h, the ESC will be automatically reactivated.

### ■ Sound and vibration produced by ABS/HBA/TCS/ESC/CDP/CDD-S/HBB and AUTO HOLD

- Noises may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine starts or just after the engine starts. This sound does not indicate that these systems fail.
- Some of the following normal conditions may occur during the operation of the above systems. These conditions do not indicate that there is a fault.
  - Vibration may be felt through the car body and steering wheel.
  - The motor sound may be heard when the car stops.

 **WARNING**

■ **Handling of wheels and suspension**

Faulty wheels or modified suspension will have an impact on the driver assistance system and may lead to system failure

■ **ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:**

- The limits of ground grip of tires are exceeded.
- The car skids when driving on slippery roads at high speed.

■ **Braking distance of ABS on special road surface**

ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the car. Be sure to keep a safe distance from the vehicles driving ahead under the following conditions:

- The car drives on muddy, gravel or snowy roads.
- The car drives with tire chains.
- The car drives on bumpy roads.
- The car drives on cratered or uneven roads.

■ **TCS may not work effectively under the following conditions:**

When the car drives on slippery roads, even if the TCS works normally, it may not control the driving direction and meet the power requirements. Do not drive the car under the condition that the car may lose stability and power.

■ **When ESC is activated**

If the indicator lamp flashes, be sure to drive carefully. Otherwise, accidents may occur easily.

■ **When ESC is Off**

Take special care and drive at a speed suitable for road conditions. In this case, the ESC can ensure the stability and driving force of the car. If not necessary, do not turn off the ESC.

■ **Replacement of wheels**

Ensure that all wheels have the same specifications, brand, tread pattern and load capacity. In addition, ensure that the tire pressure meets the requirements of the tire pressure label. If the car is equipped with different wheels, the ABS and EPS will not work properly. For details of tire or wheel replacement, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

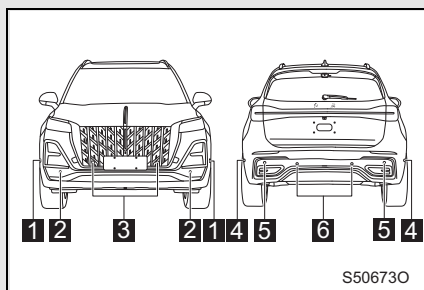
**7-1. Parking control**

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Front and rear parking<br>radar ..... | 272 |
| Reverse image<br>system* .....        | 277 |
| AVM* .....                            | 281 |
| Auto parking assist<br>(APA)* .....   | 287 |

# Front and rear parking radar

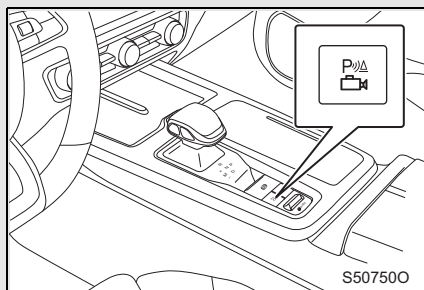
The front and rear parking radar system comprises of a control unit and ultrasonic sensors. These sensors can measure the distance between the car and obstacles. According to the change of the distance from obstacles within the detection area, the speaker sounds at different frequencies, and at same time, the multimedia display screen displays information about the distance and orientation of the obstacle. When using the system, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding area.

### ■ Sensor type



- 1 Front side long-range radar sensor\*
- 2 Front side short-range radar sensor
- 3 Front central radar sensor
- 4 Rear side long-range radar sensor\*
- 5 Rear side short-range radar sensor
- 6 Rear central radar sensor

### ■ Turning on and off parking radar



When the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, press the radar/image button to turn on the parking radar; press the same button again to turn off the parking radar.

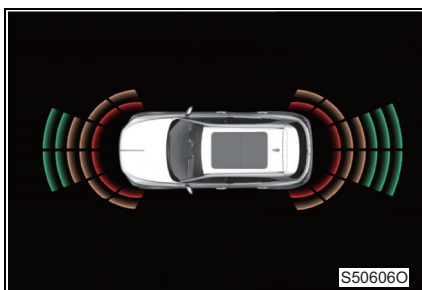


## Radar setting

The radar alarm volume and AVM (radar) self-starting function can be set in the image interface. (See P.282)

## Display

- When an obstacle is detected



When the radar detects an obstacle, an image corresponding to the position and distance from the obstacle is displayed on the multimedia display screen.

The slow-moving area, warning area and danger area are indicated in green, yellow and red respectively.

## Obstacle distance detection

When an obstacle is detected, the color block corresponding to the sensor will continuously illuminate.

- Parking slow-moving area information indication of central radar sensor



Front central radar sensor

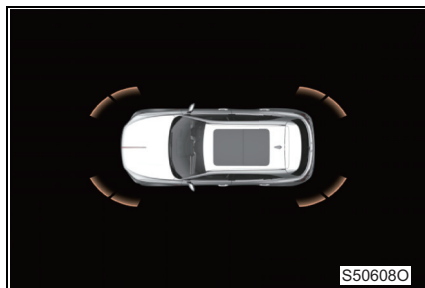
The distance from the obstacle is 80 ~ 120 cm

Rear central radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 80 ~ 150 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a green indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

- Warning area information indication of side radar sensor for parking



Side short-range radar sensor

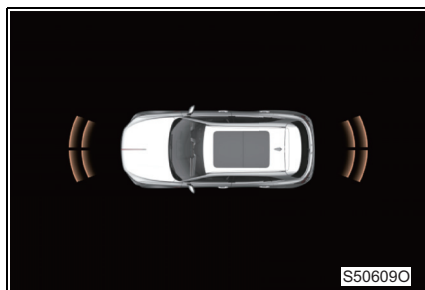
The distance from the obstacle is  
40 ~ 60 cm

Side long-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is  
30 ~ 60 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

- Parking warning area information indication of central radar sensor



Central radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is  
40 ~ 80 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

- Parking danger area information indication of radar sensor



Central/side short-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is  
1 ~ 40 cm

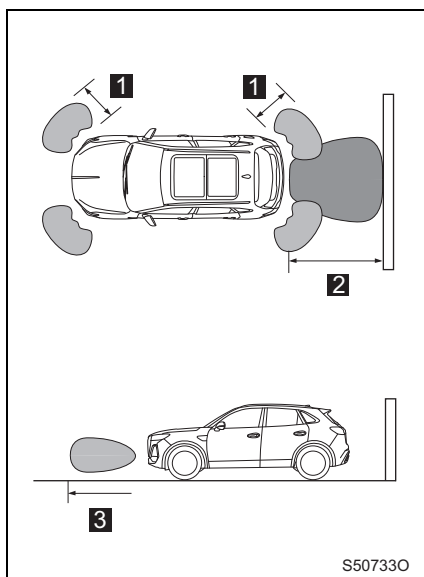
Side long-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is  
1 ~ 30 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a red indicator bar

is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker continuously sounds to warn the driver.

### Farthest detection distance of sensors



**1** About 60 cm

**2** About 150 cm

**3** About 120 cm

The figure shows the farthest distance detected by radar sensors. (Note: Radar sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the car.)

Depending on the shape of the obstacle, the detection range of the radar sensors may vary.

### ■ Detection information of sensors

- Certain car conditions and surrounding environments may affect the sensor's ability to correctly detect obstacles. For example:
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensors.
  - Sensors are obscured.
  - The car is obviously tilted.
  - The car is on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel roads or grass.
  - There is a lot of noise in the vicinity of the car, such as sounds from vehicle horns, motorcycle engines and pneumatic braking of large vehicles or other strong noises that can produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors nearby, and the sensors are working.
  - The car is equipped with a fender antenna mast or wireless antenna.
  - The car is equipped with a towing eye.
  - Bumpers or sensors are strongly impacted.

- The car is approaching a high or bent curb.
- In hot or cold weather.

In addition to the above cases, traffic signs and other objects may sometimes be judged by sensors as being closer than their actual distance due to their specific shape.

- The shape of an obstacle may prevent the sensors from detection, especially the following obstacles.
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Objects with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.
  - High obstacles with the upper part extending toward the car.



### WARNING

#### ■ Warnings for using the front and rear parking radar

To avoid accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not install anything within the working range of the sensors.
- Parking radar system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully. When necessary, intervene proactively to avoid danger.
- The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- When the vehicle speed is too fast, the system will exit. The driver must drive carefully.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions for car washing

Do not flush the sensors with water or steam. Otherwise, the sensors may fail.

# Reverse image system\*

During reversing, the reverse image system can assist the driver by displaying the image of the rear visual field of the car on the multimedia display screen.

### Activating/deactivating reverse image system

#### ■ Activation

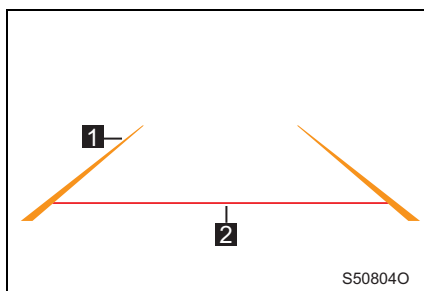
Set the shift lever to R position to activate the reverse image system.

#### ■ Deactivation

Set the shift lever to a position other than R to exit the reverse image system.

### Reversing information indication

The indication on the screen assists the driver in complete parking, and the parking guide lines are dynamically adjusted according to different angles of the vehicle.



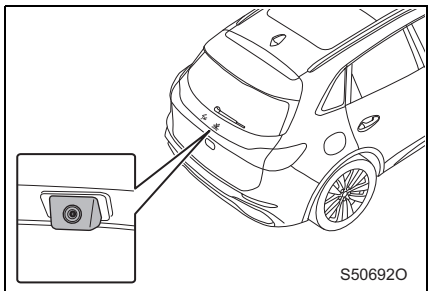
#### 1 Parking guide line

It represents the expected car trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.

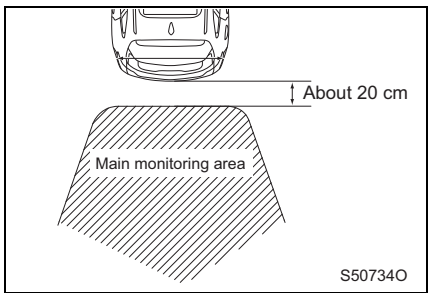
#### 2 Distance guide line

Indicates the distance line 50 cm from rear edge of bumper.

## Rearview camera

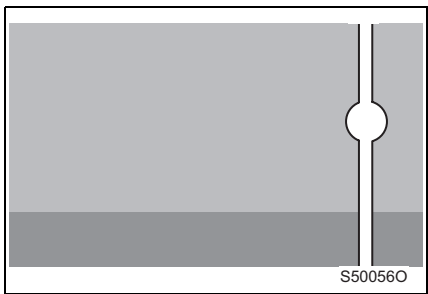


The rearview camera is positioned as indicated.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near corners of the bumper (within about 20 cm) or beneath the bumper will not be visible on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may change with the car direction or the road conditions.



If the rearview camera receives strong light (for example, sunlight reflected by the car body), it may produce the smear effect\*<sup>1</sup> unique to the rearview camera.

\*<sup>1</sup>: When the rearview camera is used to transmit images, the light source seems to have a vertical stripe extending up and down.

**WARNING****■ The reverse image system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much.**

- The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- Please drive carefully and visually confirm the situation behind and around the car. It is very dangerous to reverse only by observing the display screen, which may lead to accidents or collisions with objects. The reverse image system is only a visual auxiliary system for reversing. The image on the display screen may be different from the actual situation.

**■ Use of reverse image system**

Please observe the following precautions to prevent serious personal injury or even death.

- Do not rely solely on the reverse image system when reversing.
- Visually check and confirm through the rearview mirror that the selected path is clear.
- The displayed distance between the object and the plane may be different from the actual distance.
- Do not use this system when the trunk lid is not completely closed.



### WARNING

#### ■ Conditions affecting reverse image system

- If the rear of the car is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.
- If the temperature changes sharply, for example, when the car is splashed with hot water in cold weather, this system may not work properly.
- If the camera is dirty, it may not transmit a clear image. Rinse it with water and wipe it clean with a soft cloth. If the camera is very dirty, clean it with neutral detergent and wipe it.
- When the system temperature is low, the displayed image may darken and the moving image may be slightly distorted.
- Unsuitable use of reverse image system
  - On icy, slippery or snowy roads.
  - Tire chains or an emergency spare tire are used.
  - On an uneven or bended road, such as a bend or slope.
- If the tire is changed, the guide line position indicated on the display screen may deviate. For tire change, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Depending on the car conditions (number of occupants or luggage, etc.), the guide line position indicated on the display screen may change. Before operation, make sure to visually check the conditions behind and around the car.

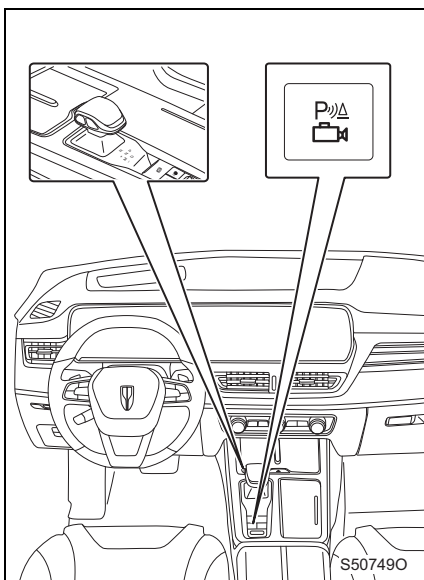


The AVM gives indications through the multimedia display screen, which is convenient for the driver to clearly view and understand the surrounding conditions of the car, and at the same time judge the relative orientation and distance of obstacles, so as to achieve safe and easy parking.

The images used in this section are examples only and may differ from those actually indicated in the car.

#### Activating and deactivating AVM

##### ■ Activation



Method 1: Set the shift lever to R position to activate the AVM.

Method 2: When the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, press the radar/image button to activate the AVM.

##### ■ Deactivation

Method 1: Press the radar/image button to exit the AVM.

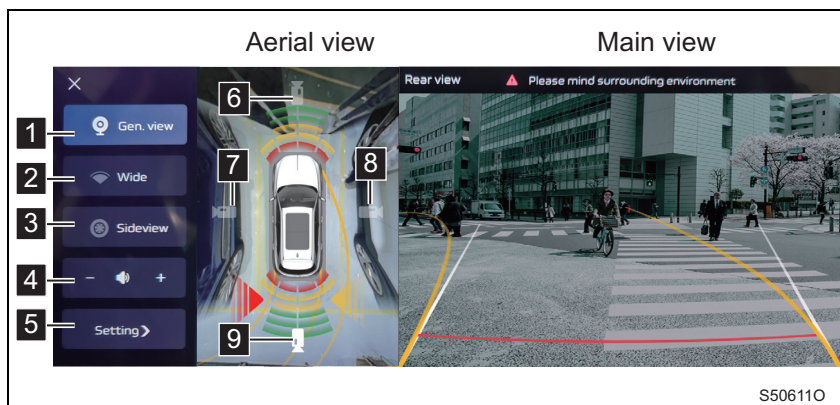
Method 2: Set the shift lever to P position to exit the AVM.

Method 3: Set the shift lever to D position and drive the car at more than 15 km/h to exit the AVM.

Method 4: Press the screen button  to exit the AVM.

### Screen modes of AVM

The AVM features several screen modes. The driver can choose the corresponding mode based on specific needs.



#### 1 Regular view

In regular view, the front view, rear view, left view, right view and aerial view can be checked.

#### 2 Wide-angle view

It is selectable in the front and rear view modes, switch the main view and aerial view to wide-angle view after selecting, providing a nearly 180° picture.

#### 3 Wheel side view

It is selectable in the front and rear view modes, you can select to check the left and right wheel side views of front or rear wheel side.

#### 4 Volume of radar alarm

The volume of radar alarm tone can be adjusted by touching.

#### 5 Setting

AVM self-starting, steering self-starting, underbody blind spot filling and moving object detection can be set.

- AVM self-starting: After enabled, the image is automatically turned on if an object or pedestrian is detected approaching.
- Steering self-starting: After enabled, the AVM will be automatically turned on in case of steering at a low speed.

- Underbody blind spot filling: After enabled, as the vehicle moves, the blind spot under the car is filled with visual image to achieve the visual effect at the bottom.
- Moving object detection: After enabled, it can detect the dynamic objects within a range of 3×5 m in the front and rear of vehicle.

#### 6 Front view

Display the front view and aerial view.

#### 7 Left view

Display the left view and aerial view.

#### 8 Right view

Display the right view and aerial view.

#### 9 Rear view

Display the rear view and aerial view.

When the turn signal lamps are turned on, the screen mode is automatically switched to the corresponding left and right views and aerial view. When the turn signal lamps are turned off, the front view of regular view is restored.

### ■ When setting the AVM self-starting function to ON

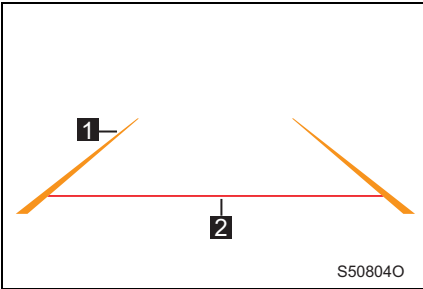
- When the shift lever is set to D position and the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, if there are obstacles within 80 cm, the radar/image screen will pop up on the display. Click the Back button to exit the radar/image prompt. At this time, the AVM self-starting function is disabled during this drive cycle.
- When the shift lever is set to R position, the radar/image system is turned on. At this time, the radar/image system can be turned off by pressing the radar/image button.
- After the parking radar/image system is turned on, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit. When the vehicle speed is lower than 12 km/h, the radar/image system will work again.

### ■ When setting the AVM self-starting function to OFF

- When the shift lever is set to R position, the parking radar system is turned on. At this time, the radar/image system can be turned off by pressing the radar/image button.
- After the system is turned on and the shift lever is set to R position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit and when the vehicle speed is lower than 12 km/h, the radar/image system will work again; if the shift lever is set to D position, and the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit and do not automatically resume.

## Parking assist line

The indication on the screen assists the driver in complete parking, and the parking guide lines are dynamically adjusted according to different angles of the vehicle.



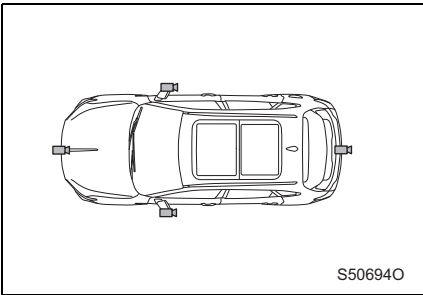
### 1 Parking guide line

It represents the expected car trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.

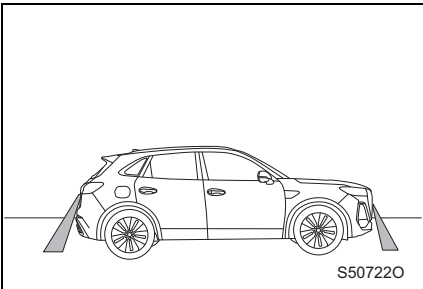
### 2 Distance guide line

Indicates the distance line 50 cm from rear edge of bumper.

## Around view camera

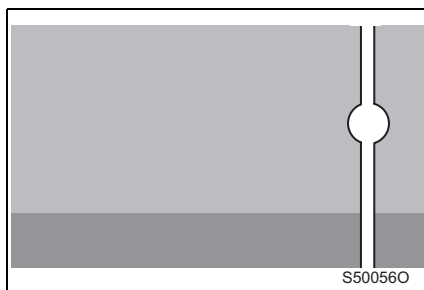


Around view cameras are installed at the front grille, trunk lid and left and right external rearview mirrors respectively.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corners of the bumpers or under the bumpers are not displayed on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may change with the car direction or the road conditions.



If the cameras receive strong light (for example, sunlight reflected by the car body), they may produce the smear effect\*<sup>1</sup> unique to the camera.

\*1: When the cameras are used to transmit images, the light source seems to have a vertical stripe extending up and down.

## WARNING

### ■ The AVM is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much.

- The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- Please drive carefully and visually confirm the situation around the car. It is very dangerous to reverse only by observing the display screen, which may lead to accidents or collisions with objects. The AVM is only a visual auxiliary system. The image on the display screen may be different from the actual situation.

### ■ When using AVM

Please observe the following precautions to prevent serious personal injury or even death.

- Do not rely solely on the AVM when reversing.
- Visually check and confirm through the rearview mirror that the selected path is clear.
- The displayed distance between the object and the plane may be different from the actual distance.
- The aerial view of AVM can only show close objects, and the cameras will not show objects outside the field of view.
- The moving object detection function can only detect moving objects at low speed, and some objects may be missed during detection. Please remain vigilant during driving.
- Do not use this system when the cameras can not work normally.



### WARNING

#### ■ Conditions affecting AVM

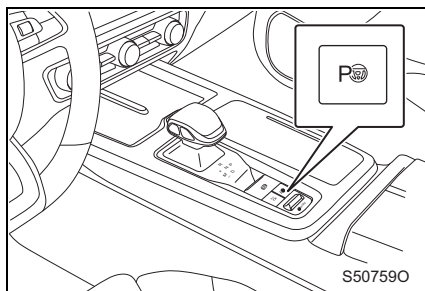
- If the car is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.
- If the temperature changes sharply, for example, when the car is splashed with hot water in cold weather, this system may not work properly.
- If the camera is dirty, it may not transmit a clear image. Rinse it with water and wipe it clean with a soft cloth. If the camera is very dirty, clean it with neutral detergent and wipe it.
- When the system temperature is low, the displayed image may darken and the moving image may be slightly distorted.
- Under the conditions of rain, snow, fog and low visibility, the camera image may not be clear.
- Situations where AVM should not be used
  - On icy, slippery or snowy roads.
  - Tire chains or an emergency spare tire are used.
  - On an uneven or bended road, such as a bend or slope.
- If the tire is changed, the guide line position indicated on the display screen may deviate. For tire change, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Depending on the car conditions (number of occupants or luggage, etc.), the guide line position indicated on the display screen may change. Before operation, make sure to visually check the conditions behind and around the car.

# Auto parking assist (APA)\*

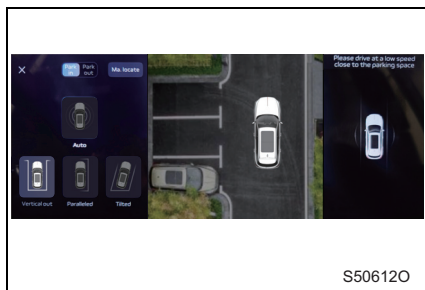
APA measures the length of the parking spaces on both sides of the road using ultrasonic waves and cameras. After the appropriate parking space is selected, the system will automatically control the vehicle to perform parking to park in the selected parking space. APA includes auto parking-in and auto parking-out. They can be selected through the multimedia display.

Before using the APA, be sure to check the automatic parking steps, precautions and warnings described in this section to prevent accidents.

## Entering APA



Press the APA button to enter the automatic parking selection interface.



The parking mode can be selected as parking-in or parking-out in the parking selection interface.

How to use auto parking-in

Step 1 Select parking space locating mode



You can search parking spaces in automatic mode and manual mode. And in each mode, there are three types of parking spaces available: Vertical parking, parallel parking, and inclined parking.

When the vehicle speed is not zero, the system defaults to automatic mode. Only when the vehicle speed is zero, the manual mode can be selected.

Step 2 Selecting the parking space



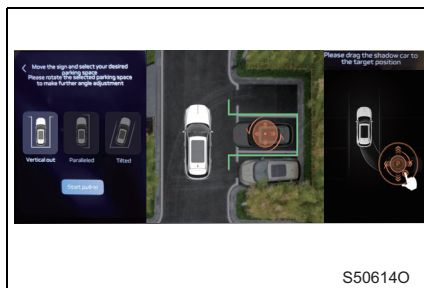
Method 1: Automatic mode selection

Driving at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the system will automatically recognize the parking spaces of the same type selected by the driver along both sides of the driving direction. When the system detects available parking spaces, they will be displayed in green or pale green. The system regards the green preferred parking space as the target parking space by default, but the driver can also manually select other available parking spaces displayed on the screen as the target parking space by touching them.

Note: After selecting the automatic mode, the default is full parking space type, allowing the system search all the parking space types. If users select



the parking space type, it can improve the success rate of finding a parking space of that particular type.



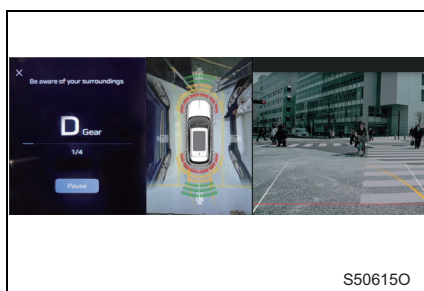
## Method 2: Manual mode selection

Driving the vehicle at a speed lower than 20 km/h, when the screen shows the parking area, stop the vehicle, select manual locating and select the type of parking space, drag and rotate the target parking space frame to move it within the parking area, when the parking space frame is red, it means that the vehicle can not be parked in the area, and you need to adjust the position of the target parking space frame on the screen.

### Step 3 Parking control

Method 1: With the target parking space confirmed, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start parking-in" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking.

Method 2: With the target parking space confirmed, shift the gear to P, apply the EPB and touch the "Start parking-in" button to start parking.



The parking process can be controlled through the display during the parking.

How to use auto parking-out

Step 1 Selecting the parking-out type

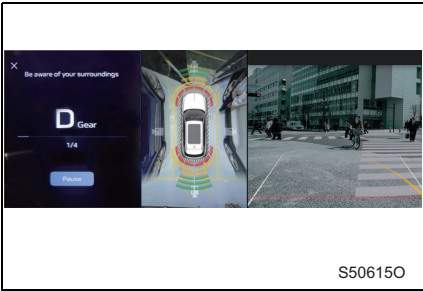


Four types of parking-out can be selected through the multimedia display: Vertical backwards, vertical forward, parallel leftwards, and parallel rightwards.

Step 2 Parking-out control

Method 1: With the parking-out type selected, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start parking-out" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking-out.

Method 2: With the parking-out type selected, shift the gear to P, apply the EPB and touch the "Start parking-out" button to start parking-out.



The parking process can be controlled through the display during the parking-out.

Parking operating conditions:

- In the process of searching a parking space, the vehicle speed should be less than 20 km/h; when it exceeds 20 km/h, slowdown will be prompted.
- No one is operating the steering wheel during parking.
- ESC OFF switch is not activated.
- ESC/ABS/TCS is not working.
- This system and related system function have no fault.

**■ Parking exit conditions:**

- The vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h during the process of searching a parking space.
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- Door is opened.
- The parking canceling button is pressed.
- Parking is not completed beyond the maximum number of movements after the automatic parking is activated.
- SACC is activated.
- ESC OFF switch is activated.
- ESC/ABS/TCS functional intervention.
- This system and related system function have fault.

**■ During the automatic parking process, it is necessary to observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle throughout the entire process. When an emergency situation occurs and braking is required, the driver needs to touch the parking pause button or depress the brake pedal or pull the EPB switch to stop the vehicle.**



### CAUTION

- **The driver is the primary controller of the vehicle, and the APA is only a driver assistance system. Although the system can provide assistance to the driver during parking, it should not replace the driver to park the vehicle and the driver must be responsible for the parking. During parking, the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and control the vehicle if necessary to avoid danger.**
- **To ensure the success rate and safety of parking system, the system needs to be used in the following environmental conditions:**
  - The road surface is flat, the height of obstacle is less than 5 cm, and the slope does not exceed 4 degrees.
  - The parking space lines are clear and the parking space is large enough.
  - The weather is good, and the driver can see the environment near the parking space clearly and unobstructedly.
  - The driving road is dry and non-slip.
- **In the process of automatically searching for parking spaces, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
  - The vehicle needs to move close to the parking space. Failure to do so may cause the parking space not to be recognized.
  - The steering angle of the vehicle should not be excessive, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
  - The vehicle speed should not be more than 20 km/h, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
  - Rain, snow, fog or dark light conditions may reduce the recognition rate of parking spaces.
  - When the parking space is too small, the parking space lines are not clear, or the parking space is irregular, it may cause failure of parking space search.
  - In the process of searching for a parking space, the image can only assist the driver, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.

**CAUTION**

- **In the process of automatically parking, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
  - The distance prompting function may have blind spots, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
  - Insufficient parking space may cause failure of parking.
  - Steep slope may cause failure of parking.
  - Slippery roads may cause failure of parking.
  - Uneven road surface, steps or low obstacles may cause failure of parking.
  - During parking, the driver should not operate the pedals, shift lever and steering wheel, otherwise the parking process will be terminated.
- **If a tire needs to be replaced, please make sure that the size of the replacement tire is exactly the same as that of the original tire, and check the four-wheel alignment parameters.**

### **WARNING**

- Due to the blind spot of the sensor, pay attention to low and small obstacles, and the corners and sides of the vehicle during parking.
- For specific limitations of the sensor, please refer to the relevant description of the parking radar.
- Pay attention to whether there is enough space when parking.
- There is a delay in the parking brake, so the driver should make a judgment in advance and stop the vehicle if the danger is found.
- Please pay special attention to people, animals and various obstacles around the vehicle, the sensor has a blind spot that cannot be detected.
- When searching for a parking space or during parking, please be aware that there are no obstacles in the parking space, such as stones, thin poles or tow bars, as the system may not detect such obstacles.
- The system may not recognize the surface or structure of certain objects (e.g., wire fences, fluffy snow, angular pillar, etc.). Therefore, please re-check that there is enough space in the parking space and surroundings before parking the vehicle.
- If the parking radar system detects an obstacle, the obstacle may disappear from the sensor detection range after the car approaches (this is highly likely to happen when detecting obstacles that are too high and too low), thus not detecting these items. Do not ignore the warning from the parking distance warning system, otherwise the vehicle may be at risk of collision.
- Due to the influence from various external sound field and electromagnetic field (e.g. other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electric control gears, induction loops, etc.), the system cannot achieve absolute immunity to interference.
- The immunity to interference and detection performance of ultrasonic ranging may be reduced by environmental conditions and obstacle reflection properties, which are determined by the physical properties of ultrasonic propagation.
- The installation position of the sensor has an important impact on the system performance, which is reflected in the reflection from the vehicle bumper surface itself, ground echo reflection and detection range.

**WARNING**

- **Avoid cleaning the sensor with a high pressure washer or steam cleaner to prevent damaging the sensor. When cleaning the vehicle, you should use a smaller water flow to rinse the sensor surface for a short time and keep at least 10 cm away.**
- **The propagation of sound waves in air is influenced by the physical properties of refraction and diffraction phenomena. Temperature differences in the air is one of the most important factors in generating a non-uniform propagation medium, leading to acoustic diffraction.**
- **The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment can be affected by the following factors:**
  - Hot vehicle exhaust.
  - High temperature asphalt road.
  - Summer breeze.
  - Temperature stratification.
- **When there is a temperature difference between the bumper and the ambient air (common in winter), temperature stratification may occur. This can lead to acoustic wave diffraction, and in certain bumper structures may pose a risk of false alarms due to reflected echoes.**
- **Some important factors that can lead to reduced detection range or failure of detection:**
  - Snow or sludge adhering to the bumper surface.
  - Plaster or ice adhering to the sensor surface.
  - High acoustic attenuation (e.g., in dry, hot environments).
  - Heavy rain or in foam.
  - Obstacles with wave-absorbing materials.
  - Flat type obstacles with angles facing the sensor and reflected echoes occurring only in a specific angular range.





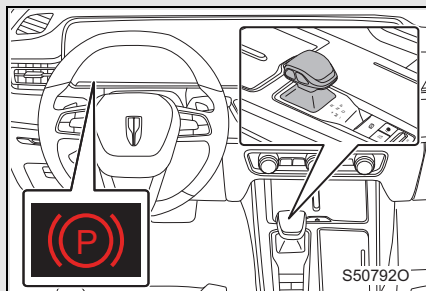
### 8-1. Parking assist

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Electronic parking<br>brake (EPB) ..... | 298 |
| AUTO HOLD .....                         | 300 |

### 8-2. Get-off

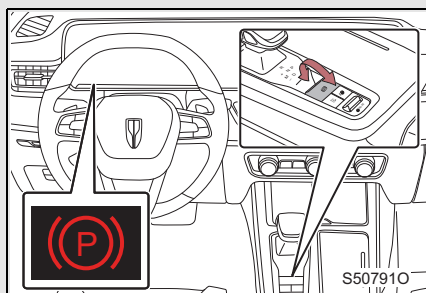
|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Door opening<br>warning* ..... | 302 |
|--------------------------------|-----|

# Electronic parking brake (EPB)



### Automatic application/release of EPB

Depress the brake pedal, and set the shift lever to P position, so the EPB is automatically applied; set the shift lever from P to D/R position to automatically release the EPB.



### Manual application/release of EPB

Depress the brake pedal and confirm that the car is stationary, lift the EPB switch up to apply the EPB; set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, depress the brake pedal, and press the EPB switch to release the EPB.

## ■ Other features of EPB

- HHC: The driver fastens the seat belt and closes the door. Before the engine starts, if the EPB is applied and the accelerator pedal is depressed, the system will automatically release the EPB, so that the car will not slip down the slope and start smoothly.
- CDP: When the car is running, continuously lift the EPB switch up, so the car will brake until it stops.

## ■ AUTO HOLD after power-off

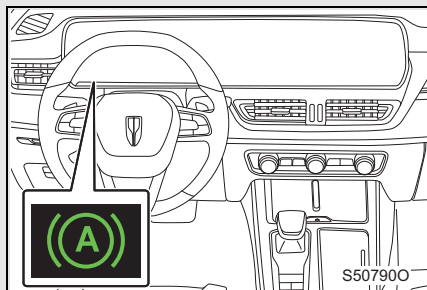
When the driver stops the car and turns off the engine switch, the EPB is automatically applied.

**CAUTION****■ Precautions before driving**

- Release the EPB completely. In case of failure (e.g., electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked by mechanical method. It is recommended that you contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for handling.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lamp is on. Driving the car at this time will cause the brake components to overheat, thus affecting the braking performance and aggravating the wear of the brake.

# AUTO HOLD

**When the AUTO HOLD is ready, depress the brake pedal to stop the car and activate the AUTO HOLD. At this time, if the brake pedal is released, the car will keep braking. When the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed again, the system will deactivate the AUTO HOLD to achieve a smooth start.**



When the AUTO HOLD is activated, the AUTO HOLD indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.

### ■ Turning on and off AUTO HOLD

The AUTO HOLD can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system.  
(See P.163)

---

### ■ AUTO HOLD function

- The AUTO HOLD can assist in holding the vehicle during engine start on slope. However, on steep slopes, the AUTO HOLD may not stop the car. In this case, it is necessary to apply the brake manually.
- After the AUTO HOLD is activated for a period of time, the EPB will take over the AUTO HOLD.

### ■ Operating conditions of AUTO HOLD

- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The driver depresses the brake pedal until the car is stationary, and then releases the brake pedal.

**WARNING****■ Parking on slippery roads**

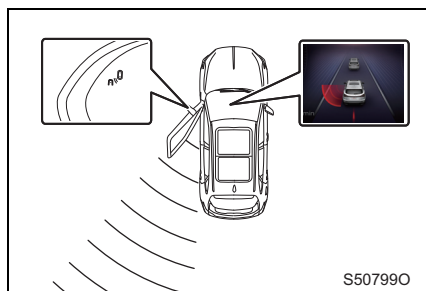
The AUTO HOLD does not prevent the car from moving if the ground grip of the tires is exceeded. Do not use this system on slippery roads.

**CAUTION****■ When parking**

The AUTO HOLD cannot be used for long-term parking. If the car needs to be parked for a long time, please apply the EPB.

## Door opening warning\*

The system assesses the risk by considering the relative position, relative speed and relative acceleration of the car to the side and rear oncoming vehicles, as well as the door opening intention of the driver and passengers. If there is danger in opening the doors at this time, the driver will be prompted by audible and visual alarms.



When the shift lever is not set to R position and the vehicle speed is 0~3 km/h, if another vehicle approaches within 2 m laterally and 20 m longitudinally behind the car, the warning indicator lamp on the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on, the ambient lamp on the door on the corresponding side remains on, and the instrument cluster displays alarm information. At this time, if the door is opened, the indicator lamp flashes, and the ambient lamp on the door on the corresponding side flashes, and the system issues an audible alarm to warn the driver that it is dangerous to open the door. When the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h, the function is turned off.

## Turning on/off door opening warning system

The door opening warning system can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.163)

### ■ The door opening warning system may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:

- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
- There are fixed obstacles on the roadside (e.g., tunnel wall, cement barrier of viaduct, metal billboard, etc.).



### CAUTION

- Be careful not to impact the rear bumper during parking. Otherwise, the sensors in the bumper may be shifted or damaged, which may cause the system to shut down automatically or affect the system function.
- In order to ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and not be covered by other objects.
- Only the paint approved by our company can be applied to the rear bumper. Other kinds of paint may cause limited functions or failure of the system.
- If this system does not work normally, please turn it off immediately, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for repair.
- After relevant components of the door opening warning system are repaired, calibration is required. For details, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- The door opening warning system is only an auxiliary reminder, and cannot completely avoid vehicle collision. Before opening the door and getting off, please check the rearview mirrors and give a glance to rear areas.
- Under special working conditions such as wet weather, the door opening warning system may give false alarms or miss alarms, which are normal phenomena.
- When the rear radar is blocked, the system will not work. Therefore, it needs to be cleaned in time.



## **WARNING**

- The door opening warning system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The driver is the most important controller of the car. The door opening warning system is only an auxiliary reminder. The driver must always have control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the car.
- Turn off the radar detection system when a trailer or some accessories (e.g., bicycle bracket) are installed at the rear. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar may be blocked, resulting in abnormal operation of the system.
- The door opening warning system can detect targets such as car, electric motorcycle and bicycle. If target vehicles have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians, animals or other objects cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.



## 9-1. Important information

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Hazard warning lamp ..... | 306 |
| SOS alarm* .....          | 307 |

## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

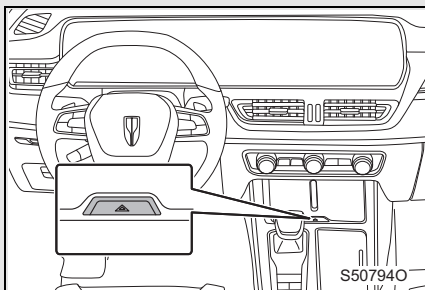
|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| If the car needs to be towed .....          | 308 |
| If the car is found to be abnormal .....    | 313 |
| If you have a flat tire .....               | 314 |
| If the engine cannot start .....            | 322 |
| If the key is lost .....                    | 323 |
| If the key fails to work normally .....     | 324 |
| If the door cannot be locked normally ..... | 326 |
| If battery power is low .....               | 328 |
| If your car overheats .....                 | 331 |
| If car trap occurs .....                    | 333 |
| If driving on water-logged road .....       | 335 |
| If you have a burst tire .....              | 336 |

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| If an accident occurs .....          | 337 |
| Emergency opening of trunk lid ..... | 338 |

## 9-1. Important information

# Hazard warning lamp

**When the car breaks down, please stop by the roadside and turn on the hazard warning lamp; if the car cannot be moved due to breakdown, please turn on the hazard warning lamp and put a warning triangle behind the car. If necessary, please wear a reflective vest.**



Press the hazard warning lamp switch to make all turn signal lamps flash; press it again to turn off the hazard warning lamp.



### CAUTION

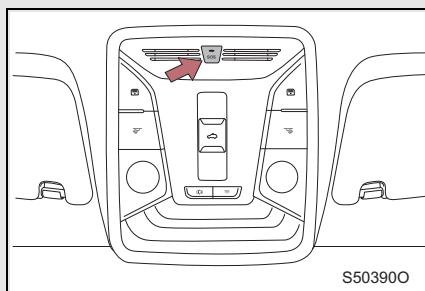
#### ■ Preventing low battery

When the engine is not running, if it is not necessary to use the hazard warning lamp, turn it off.

## 9-1. Important information

### SOS alarm\*

If you need help in an emergency, press and hold the SOS alarm switch for 3 seconds. The emergency rescue phone will start dialing, and the SOS lamp will change from always on to flashing. After receiving your call for help, the background service will coordinate appropriate rescue assistance.



SOS alarm switch is located behind the front interior lamp.



#### CAUTION

- Please use the SOS alarm switch when needed.
- The SOS alarm function requires an Internet connection to operate. In some regions, vehicles may not be equipped with this function or it may be temporarily unavailable. For detailed configuration and usage information, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If the car needs to be towed

**If the car needs to be towed, FAW suggests that a rollback carrier tow truck is used and the towing is handled by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or a professional rescue company.**

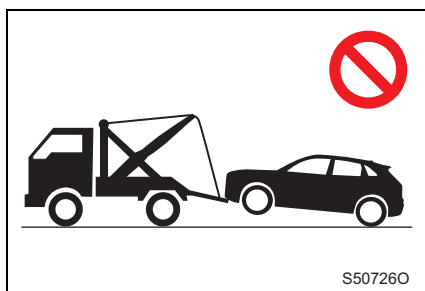
**During the towing process, safety chains shall be used and all laws and regulations of the country shall be complied with.**

#### Before towing

If the following conditions occur, the transmission may be faulty. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer before towing the car.

- The engine is running normally, but the car cannot move.
- The transmission has abnormal noise or vibration.

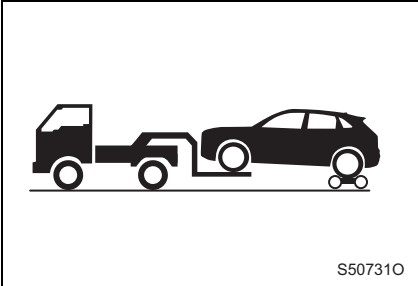
#### It is strictly forbidden to use a bumper lift tow truck for towing



Do not use a bumper lift tow truck for towing, as it may cause damage to the car body.

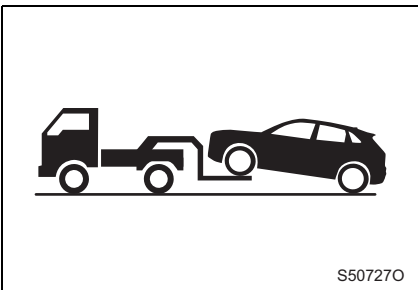
## Towing from the front with a wheel lift tow truck

### ■ 4WD



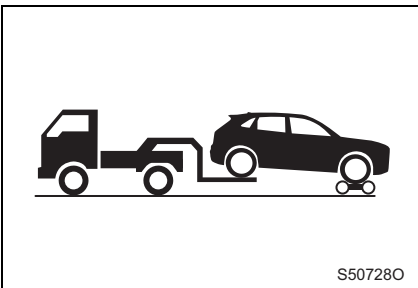
Locate the towing trolley under the rear wheels.

### ■ 2WD



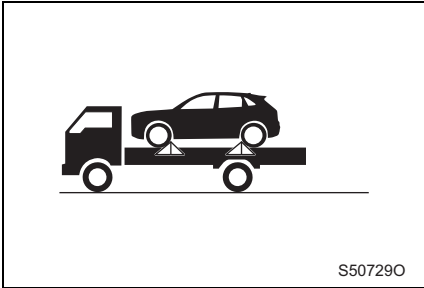
Release the parking brake.

## Towing from the rear with a wheel lifting tow truck



Locate the towing trolley under the front wheels.

Towing with a rollback carrier tow truck



Apply the EPB, and turn off the engine switch.

Use wedges under 4 wheels to prevent the car from moving.

As shown in the figure, tie the tires to the bottom plate of the tow truck to secure the car.

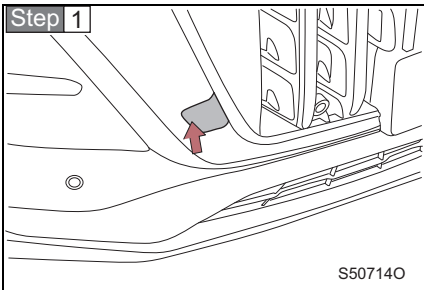
Emergency towing

If the carrier tow truck cannot be found in an emergency, fasten the towing cable or towing chain to the towing eye and set the shift lever to N position to temporarily tow the car. This method can only be used for towing forward at low speed ( $\leq 70$  km/h) and short distance (100 km) on hard pavement.

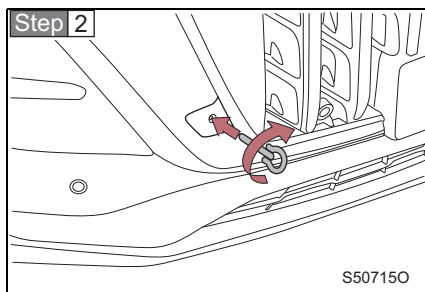
The driver must sit in the car and control the steering wheel and brake pedal. The wheels, drivetrain, steering wheel and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing steps

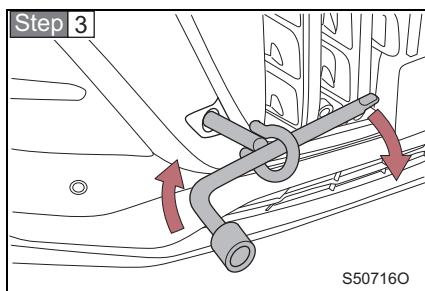
The following procedures use the towing from front as an example, and for reference if towing from rear.



Press the left side of towing eye hole cover to detach the towing eye hole cover.



Insert the towing eye into the hole and tighten it slightly by hand.



Tighten the towing eye with the auxiliary tool.

**Step 4** Secure the towing cable or towing chain firmly to the towing eye.

Be careful not to damage the car body.

**Step 5** Start the vehicle, release the EPB and set the shift lever to N position.

### ■ Towing

- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will not work, making braking and steering more difficult.
- If the shift lever cannot be set to N position, do not carry out emergency towing. Otherwise, the car may be damaged during towing.

### ■ Towing a trailer

FAW recommends that you do not use the car to tow a trailer, or install any towing equipment or tow any wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. using the towing equipment. The car is not designed for towing any trailer or as a mounting carrier of towing equipment.

### ■ Towing eye

The towing eye is stored in the driver's tool box. (See P.315)



### WARNING

Please observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

#### ■ Before towing

Be sure to transport the car with all the driving wheels or all four wheels off the ground.

If the car is towed with the driving wheels touching the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.

#### ■ Towing

- For towing with ropes, the tow truck starts only when the ropes are tightened, and the ropes must be kept tightened all the time during towing. Otherwise, excessive pulling force will be generated on the towing eye and ropes, resulting in damage to the towing eye or ropes and personal injury.
- Do not set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode. The steering wheel may be locked and inoperable.

#### ■ Installation of towing eye on the car

Ensure that the towing eye is securely installed. Otherwise, the towing eye may loosen during towing, which may cause accidents.



### CAUTION

#### ■ During towing with a wheel lift tow truck, prevent damage to the car.

When the car is lifted, make sure that there is enough ground clearance at the landing end of the car for towing. Otherwise, the car may be damaged during towing.

#### ■ During towing with a bumper lift tow truck, prevent damage to the car.

Regardless of towing at the front or rear of the car, do not use a bumper lift tow truck.

#### ■ During towing with a rollback carrier tow truck, prevent damage to the car.

- Do not pass the wedges. Otherwise, the tires may be damaged.
- Do not tie other parts (such as suspension) except for tires.



### If the car is found to be abnormal

**If any of the following symptoms are found, the car may need to be adjusted or repaired. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.**

■ Visible symptoms

- There is a liquid leaked under the car.  
(It is normal for the A/C to drip water after use, and for the drain hole on the exhaust pipe may also drip water. )
- Flat tire or uneven tire wear.
- Continuously and abnormally high coolant temperature.

■ Audible symptoms

- Change in the exhaust sound.
- Excessive tire noise during turning.
- Abnormal noise related to suspension system.
- Engine-related noise.

■ Operation symptoms

- Misfire, instability or unstable operation of the engine.
- Noticeable decrease in power.
- The car pulls to one side seriously during braking.
- The car pulls to one side seriously during driving on a flat road.
- The brake system malfunctions, or the brake pedal feels soft and nearly reaches the floor.

### If you have a flat tire

**Removing the leaking tire and replacing it with a spare tire.**



#### **WARNING**

■ **Do not drive the car with flat tires**

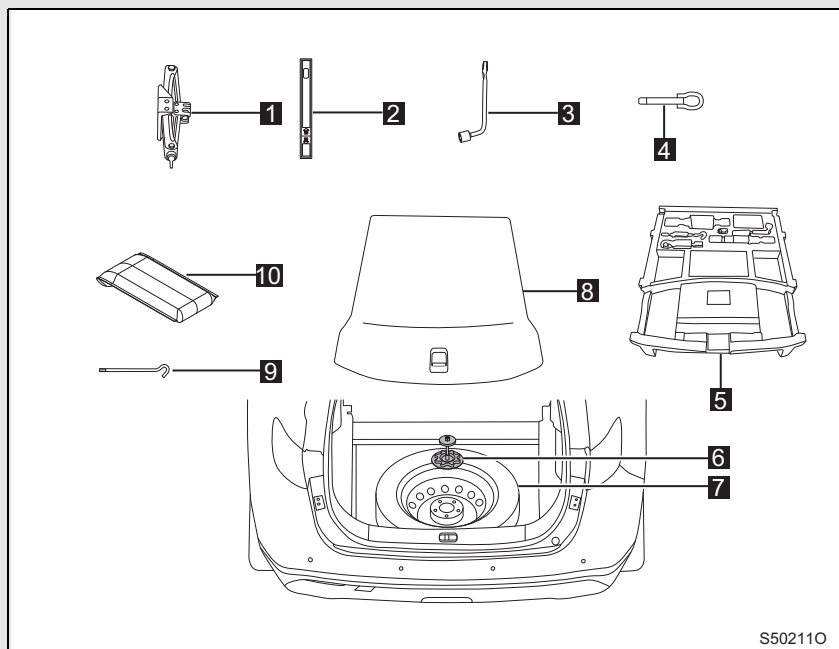
- Do not continue driving the car when any tire leaks.

Otherwise, even if the driving distance is short, tires and the car may be damaged, which will lead to unfeasible repair and even cause traffic accidents.

■ **Before jacking up the car**

- Park the car on a solid and level road.
- Apply the EPB.
- Set the shift lever to P position.
- Shut down the engine.
- Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place the warning triangle.

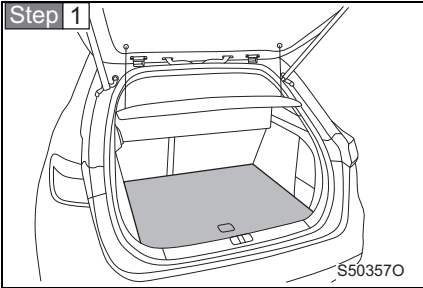
## ■ Spare tire and driver's tools



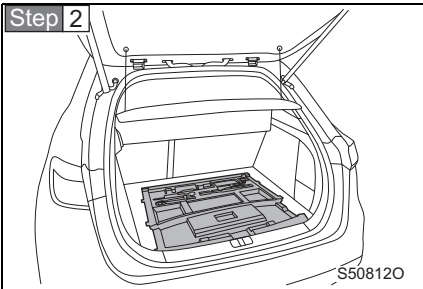
S502110

- 1** Jack
- 2** Warning triangle
- 3** Tire wrench
- 4** Towing eye
- 5** Driver's tool box
- 6** Spare tire retainer
- 7** Spare tire
- 8** Trunk carpet
- 9** Jack crank
- 10** Reflective vest assembly

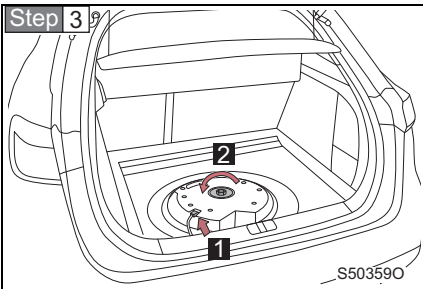
Taking out the spare tire



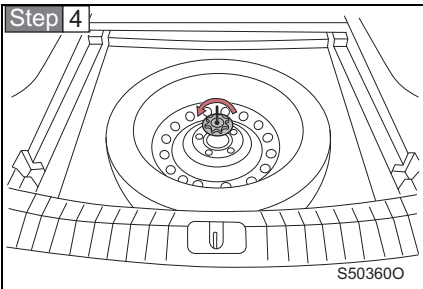
Take out the trunk carpet.



Take out the driver's tool box.



- 1 Disconnect the speaker connector.
- 2 Loosen and remove the retainer with a tire wrench, and take out the speaker.



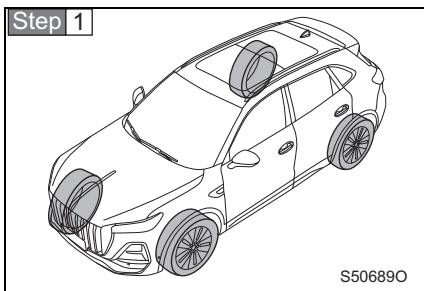
Loosen and remove the spare tire retainer and take out the spare tire.

**⚠ WARNING**

**■ Handling the spare tire**

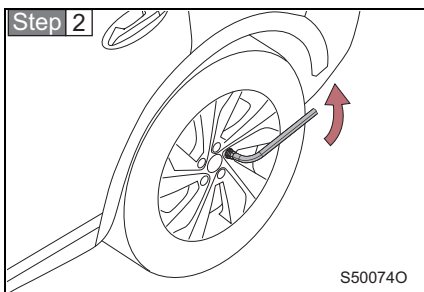
Be careful not to get fingers or other parts of your body trapped between the spare tire and car body.

**Replacing the leaking tire**



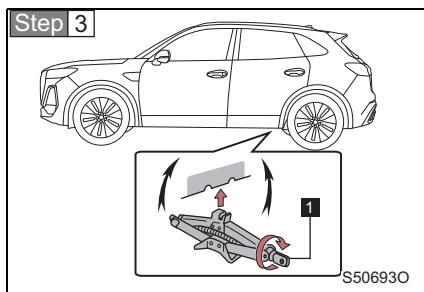
Wedge the tire.

| Leaking tire |       | Wedge position              |
|--------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| Front wheel  | Left  | Behind the right rear tire  |
|              | Right | Behind the left rear tire   |
| Rear wheel   | Left  | Before the right front tire |
|              | Right | Before the left front tire  |



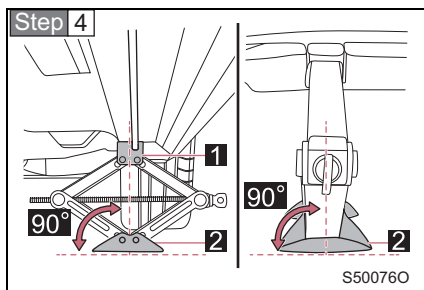
Loosen the wheel nuts slightly (one turn) using the tire wrench.

## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

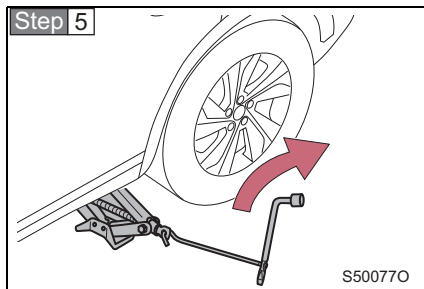


Turn the "1" position of the tire jack by hand until the jack notch contacts the jacking point of the car.

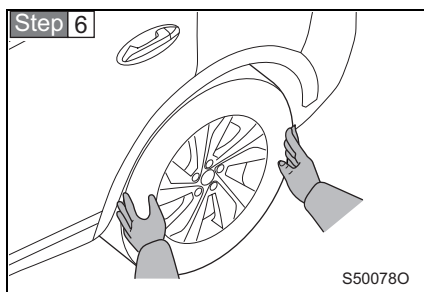
The jacking point mark is under the door sill plate. Be sure to support the car at the jacking point.



Correct the position of the jack so that the notch "1" aligns the jacking point and the bottom plate "2" is flat on the ground. At this time, the bottom plate "2" must be right under the jacking point.



Insert the jack crank into the opening of the jack. Rotate the jack crank to lift the car so that the wheels are slightly off the ground.



Remove all wheel nuts, and then remove the wheel.

When the wheel is placed on the ground, the spokes should be placed upwards to avoid scratching the rim surface.

**WARNING****■ Replacing the leaking tire**

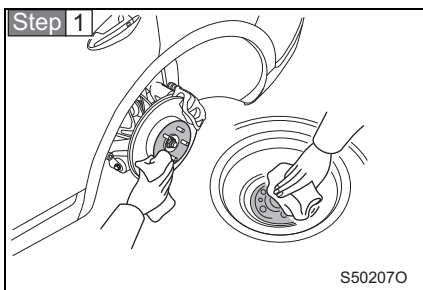
- Do not touch the areas around wheels or brakes immediately after the car runs.

After the car runs, the areas around wheels and brakes will be very hot. When changing tires, avoid touching them with hands, feet, or other body parts to prevent burns.

- Failure to observe the following precautions may result in loose wheel nuts and detached tires, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
  - After the wheel is replaced, use a torque wrench to tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque.
  - Do not install any severely damaged wheel trim, as it may fall off the wheel while the car is running.
  - When installing wheels, only use wheel nuts specially designed for that wheel.
  - If there are cracks or deformations on the wheel bolts or nuts, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.
- Be sure to tighten the wheel nuts correctly and firmly.

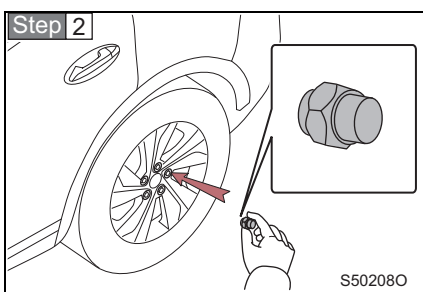
It is dangerous that the wheel nuts are tightened improperly or become loose. Wheels may shake or fall off. This may cause a loss of control and lead to serious accidents.

### Installing the spare tire

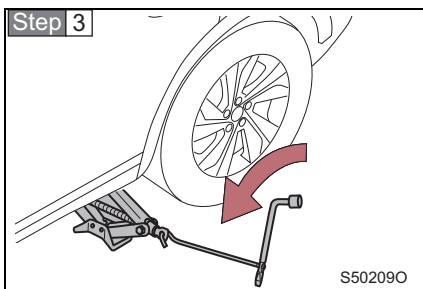


Remove dirt or foreign matters from the mating surface of the wheel.

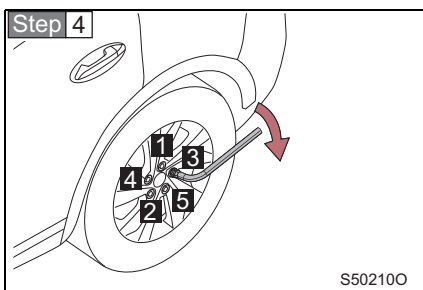
If there are foreign matters on the mating surface of the wheel, the wheel nuts may loosen while the car is in motion, which may cause the wheel to detach from the car.



Install the wheel and tighten the wheel nuts evenly by hand.



Lower the car.



Tighten the wheel nuts with force in the order shown in the figure.

Tightening torque:  
108.7 - 147 N·m



**WARNING****■ After using tools and jacks**

Before driving, ensure that all tools and jacks are firmly secured in their storage positions to minimize the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

**■ Cleaning before wheel installation**

If there are foreign matters on the mating surface of the wheel, the wheel nuts may loosen while the car is in motion, which may cause the wheel to detach from the car.

**■ Installing the spare tire**

- Never apply oil or grease to wheel bolts.

Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts too tight, resulting in damage to the bolt or spoke wheel. In addition, oil or grease may cause wheel nuts to become loose and cause the wheel to fall off, thus causing accidents, serious injury or even death. Please remove all oil or grease from wheel bolts or nuts.

- After the wheel is replaced, please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible to tighten the wheel nuts to the standard torque with a torque wrench.
- If the bolt holes of the wheel are damaged or cracked, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection and replacement of the wheel.
- After replacing the spare tire, the four-wheel drive function will be temporarily disabled.

### If the engine cannot start

**If the engine does not start even after correct engine start steps are performed (see P.190), consider the following reasons.**

- Even if correct engine start steps are followed, the engine cannot start.

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- There is not enough fuel in the fuel tank of the car.  
Fuel the car.

- The engine may spill fuel.

Try to start the engine again according to the normal engine start steps. (See P.190)

- There is a fault in engine IMMO system. (See P.67)

- Starter speed is slow, interior lamps and headlamps are dim, or horns do not sound or sound with low volume

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- Battery power is low. (See P.328)
- The terminals of the battery may be loose or corroded.

- Starter is not running

An electrical failure (e.g., open circuit) may cause engine starting system failure.

- The starter does not operate, the interior lamps and headlamps do not come on, or the horn does not sound.

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- The terminals of the battery may be disconnected.
- The battery may be depleted.

If the faults cannot be eliminated or the maintenance steps are unclear, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### If the key is lost

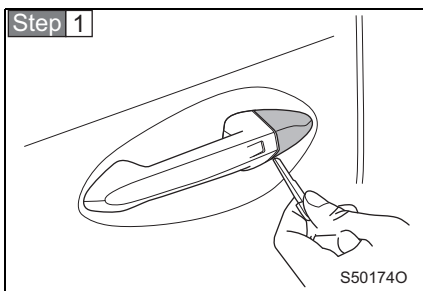
**If the smart key is lost or stolen, please provide the remaining keys to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible. After the keys are re-matched, the lost or stolen key will become invalid. Unauthorized modification or non-genuine spare parts may lead to system failure.**

## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

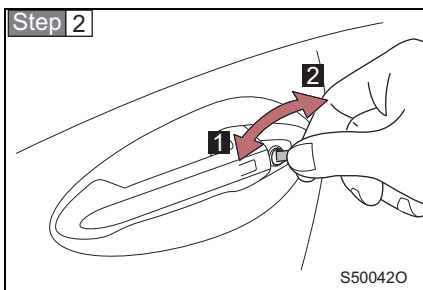
### If the key fails to work normally

If communication between the key and the car is interrupted (see P.94) or the key cannot be used due to insufficient battery power, the PEPS and wireless remote control will be invalid. At this time, the following steps can be followed to open the doors or start the engine.

#### Locking and unlocking the doors



Use the mechanical key to remove the door keyhole cover.



Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the door.

**1** Locking the door

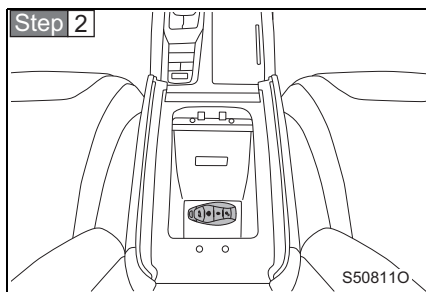
**2** Unlocking the door

#### Backup engine start mode

When the key battery is depleted, the backup start mode should be used.

**Step 1** Set the shift lever to P position, depress the brake pedal and press the engine switch.

At this time, the multifunction display in the instrument cluster will prompt that the key cannot be recognized.



Open the front center storage box, and put the smart key in the forward position at the bottom of storage box.

**Step 3** Depress the brake pedal and press the engine switch to start the engine.

If the engine still can't start, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

---

#### ■ Replacing key battery

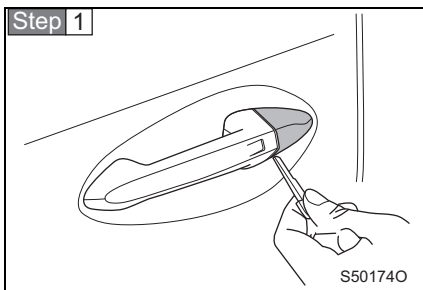
If the key battery is low, replace it in time. (See P.379)

## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

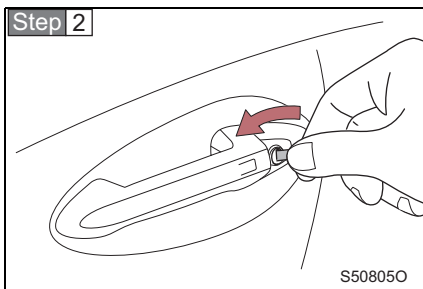
### If the door cannot be locked normally

**Doors cannot be locked by PEPS or wireless remote control when the key battery is depleted. At this time, the following steps can be followed to lock doors.**

#### Locking the driver's door

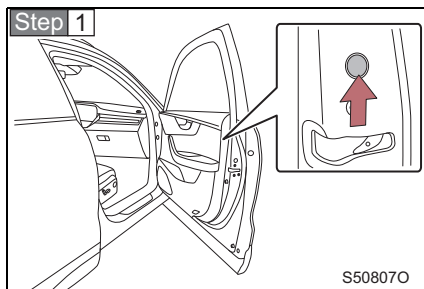


Use the mechanical key to remove the door keyhole cover.

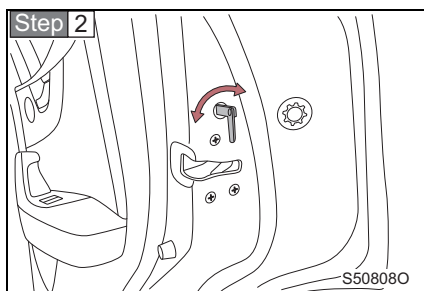


Use the mechanical key to lock the doors.

## Locking the front passenger's door and rear passenger's doors



Disengage the cover of the mechanical lock switch on the door on the corresponding side.



Close the door after locking with the mechanical key.

Front passenger's and right rear doors: turn the switch clockwise;  
Left rear door: turn the switch counterclockwise.

## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If battery power is low

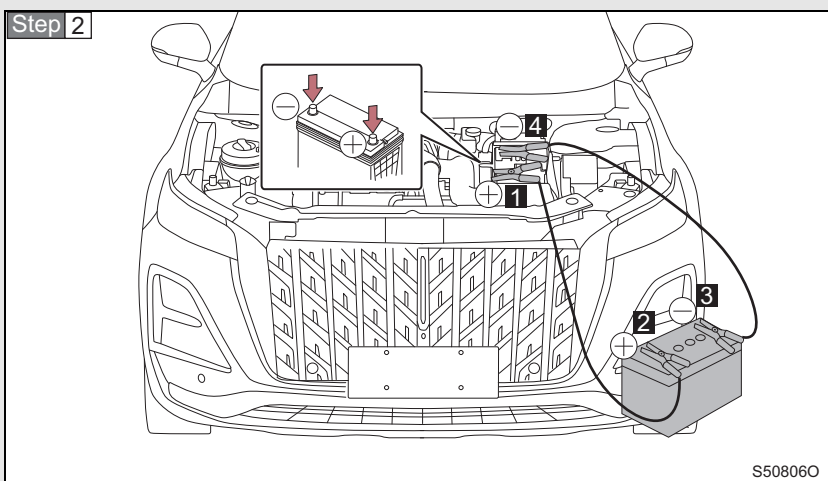
If the battery power is low, the following measures can be adopted to start the engine.

You can contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or a professional repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper cables (or auxiliary cables) and another vehicle with a 12 V battery, you can jump start your car according to the following steps.

**Step 1** Open the cover of the battery positive terminal.

**Step 2**



Connecting jumper cables

- 1** Connect to the positive (+) terminal of your car.
- 2** Connect to the battery positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle.
- 3** Connect to the battery negative (-) terminal of the other vehicle.
- 4** Connect to the negative (-) terminal of your car.



**Step 3** Start the engine of the other vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and keep it for about 5 min to recharge the battery of your car.

**Step 4** Keep the engine of the other car running, turn the engine switch of this car to "IG-ON" mode, and start the engine.

**Step 5** Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order of connection once the engine is started successfully.

Once the car is started, drive it to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection as soon as possible.

If the car cannot be started by jumping, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer promptly.

#### ■ Preventing low battery power

- After engine stalls, turn off the headlamps and in-vehicle infotainment system.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical equipment when the car is driven at low speed for a long time (e.g. in traffic jams).

#### ■ Charging battery

- Due to natural discharge and the wear-out effect of certain electrical consumers, the power stored in the battery is gradually depleted even when the car is not in use. If the car is not in use for a long time, the battery power may be exhausted and the engine may fail to be started.
- The battery can be charged by a charger or another vehicle. When charging via a charger, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the ground wire.

#### ■ Replacing battery

- Use the battery that meets the standard of genuine part.



#### CAUTION

##### ■ Handling jumper cables

- Only use a 12 V auxiliary battery.
- When connecting or disconnecting jumper cables, do not tangle the cables with the cooling fan or engine belt.



### WARNING

#### ■ Removing 12 V battery terminals

- Be sure to disconnect the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal is removed and it touches any metal in the surrounding area, it may spark and cause a fire, possibly an electric shock, resulting in serious injury or even death.

#### ■ Once the car is started after charging, drive it to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection as soon as possible.

#### ■ Preventing fire or explosion of battery

The battery may release flammable gases, therefore, be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid accidental ignition:

- Make sure that the jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals and will not accidentally touch any terminals other than the correct ones.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal touch any other part or metal surface in this area, such as bracket or unpainted metal.
- Do not let the "+" and "-" clamps of the jumper cable contact with each other.
- Do not use any open flames, smoke or use matches or lighters near the battery.

#### ■ Precautions for battery

The battery contains toxic and corrosive acidic electrolytes. Therefore, be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- Always wear goggles when handling the battery to prevent any battery electrolyte from coming into contact with your skin and clothing or car body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery electrolyte comes into contact with your skin or eyes, rinse the contact area immediately with water and seek medical attention. Cover the contact area with a damp sponge or a piece of damp cloth until you see a doctor.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery bracket, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Keep children away from the battery.

### If your car overheats

**The car may be overheated under the following conditions.**

- The alarm for high coolant temperature is issued or a power drop is felt.
- Steam comes out beneath the hood.

■ Countermeasures

**Step 1** Park the car in a safe place and turn off the A/C system.

**Step 2** Check whether steam comes out beneath the hood.

**If steam comes out:**

Turn off the engine switch. After steam dissipates, carefully lift the hood and restart the engine.

**If steam does not come out:**

Keep the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

**Step 3** Check whether the cooling fan is operating.

**If the fan runs:**

Wait until the engine coolant temperature starts to decrease (engine coolant temperature is displayed on the instrument cluster), and stop the engine.

**If the fan does not run:**

Stop the engine, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

**Step 4** After the system has cooled sufficiently, check the coolant level, and check the radiator for leakage.

**Step 5** Add coolant if necessary. (See P.361)

If there is no coolant in case of emergency, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions for inspection:

When opening the hood for inspection, be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid accidents or personal injuries.

- If steam comes out beneath the hood, do not open the hood before steam dissipates. The engine may be very hot, resulting in serious injuries such as scalding.
- When the engine is running, do not approach the fan and engine belt.
- When the engine and radiator are hot, do not release the coolant filler cap, otherwise hot coolant and steam may be released under pressure, resulting in serious scalding and other injuries.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Adding coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled sufficiently. If cold coolant is added too quickly when the engine is hot, it can cause damage.

#### ■ Preventing damage to cooling system

Please observe the following precautions:

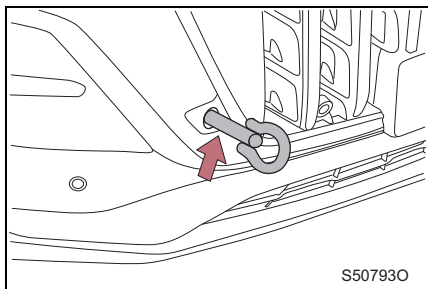
- Prevent foreign matters (such as sand or dust) from entering into coolant.
- Do not use any coolant additives.

### If car trap occurs

**In case of wheel idling or trapping in mud or snow, perform the following operations.**

- Step 1** Apply the EPB and set the shift lever to P position. Turn off the engine switch.
- Step 2** Remove mud, snow or sand around the trapped tires.
- Step 3** Place wooden blocks, stones or other materials under all tires to help increase the ground grip of the tires.
- Step 4** Restart the engine.
- Step 5** Set the shift lever to D or R position, and depress the accelerator pedal carefully to drive the car out of the trap.

#### ■ Emergency towing



- If the car is trapped or immobile, the towing eye can be used to tie the towing cable or chain to another vehicle to tow the car in an emergency.
- For details, refer to "If the car needs to be towed" in this chapter. (See P.308)
- It is not recommended to tow other vehicles with your car.

#### **WARNING**

##### ■ Driving the car out of the trap

If the car is driven out of the trap by pushing the car from the front and rear, make sure that the surrounding area is spacious and unimpeded to avoid colliding with other vehicles, objects or people. When the car is to be driven out of the trap, it may suddenly rush forward or backward, so extra care shall be taken.

##### ■ When operating the shift lever

Do not depress the accelerator pedal during gear shifting, otherwise the car may accelerate suddenly, resulting in a serious accident.



### CAUTION

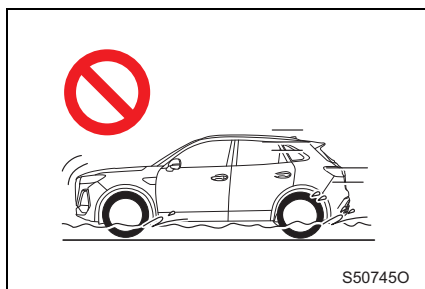
#### ■ Preventing damage to transmission and other components

- Avoid wheel idling and do not run the engine at high speed.
- If the car still cannot get out of the trap after several attempts, it is required to seek the assistance of a tow truck.

### If driving on water-logged road

**In case of accidental driving on a water-logged road and water entry, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for the following inspections:**

- Check the braking efficiency of brakes.
- Check the oil level and quality of the engine, transmission, reducer, etc. (if the lubricating oil is turbid, it is contaminated by water; in this case, change the lubricating oil).
- Check the lubrication of the propeller shaft, bearings, joints, etc.



In case of driving on a water-logged road, engine flameout, short circuit of electrical components, and water entry are likely to occur. Do not attempt to start the engine after flameout, otherwise the engine may be damaged seriously.

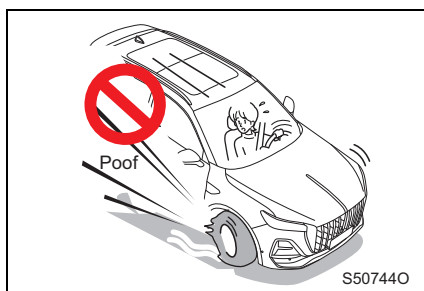
### If you have a burst tire

**In the event of tire burst or rupture during driving, keep calm.**

Hold the steering wheel firmly and depress the brake pedal slowly to decelerate the car. If you perform emergency braking or turn the steering wheel sharply, you are prone to lose control of the car.

It is necessary to check for tire burst or rupture under the following conditions:

- Steering wheel jitter.
- Abnormal car vibration.
- Abnormal car inclination.



Do not drive with a flat tire.

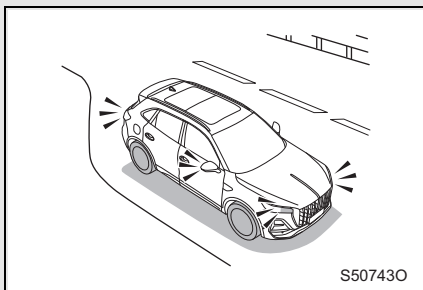
Driving with a flat tire is so dangerous that accidents are likely to occur. In addition, tires, rims, suspensions and body will be damaged. In this case, replace the tires promptly or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



## 9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

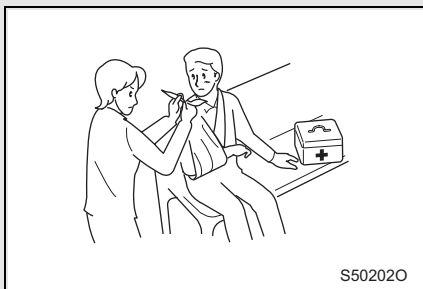
### If an accident occurs

**Don't panic, instead, follow the steps below:**



- 1** Prevent consecutive accidents.

Move the car to a safe area so as not to interfere with traffic, and turn off the engine switch.



- 2** Take emergency measures in case of personal injuries.

Try to take emergency measures before arrival of the doctor and ambulance. If the head is injured seriously, try to keep still. If there is a risk of consecutive accidents, move the injured person to a safe place.



- 3** Call the police.

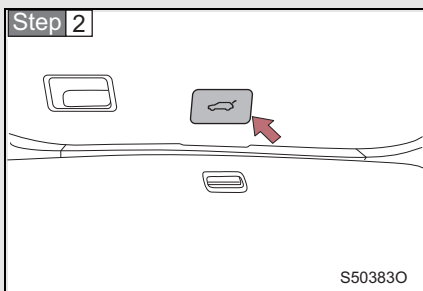
- 4** Confirm the troublemaker and record the relevant information (name, address, phone number, etc.).

- 5** Contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer and insurance company.

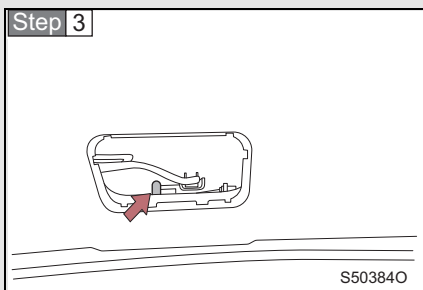
### Emergency opening of trunk lid

The following steps can be taken as emergency measures to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened.

**Step 1** Enter the trunk area via folding the rear seat back.



Open the emergency unlocking cover on the trunk lid.



Push the trunk lid unlocking cross-pin to open the trunk lid.



#### WARNING

■ **When opening or closing the trunk lid manually in an emergency, be careful to prevent injuries.**

- Do not allow children or persons in need of assistance to operate the car alone, otherwise they may be trapped in the car or trunk and cannot safely leave or perform self-rescue in the event of an emergency.
- With the variation of seasons, the temperature in the locked car may be very high or low, therefore, occupants especially children are prone to injury or illness and even death.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, take special care to ensure that there is no person between the trunk lid and the body.

**CAUTION****■ Preventing damage to car**

When opening or closing the trunk lid in an emergency, be careful during removal and refitting of the parts, to avoid damaging the car.



### 10-1. Service and maintenance

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cleaning and protecting<br>exterior trims<br>of car ..... | 342 |
| Cleaning and protecting<br>interior trims<br>of car ..... | 345 |

### 10-2. Maintenance

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Precautions for<br>maintenance ..... | 348 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|

### 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Precautions for<br>maintenance by<br>yourself ..... | 351 |
| Particulate filter .....                            | 354 |
| Engine hood .....                                   | 356 |
| Engine<br>compartment .....                         | 357 |
| Tire .....                                          | 370 |
| Tire pressure .....                                 | 373 |
| Wheel .....                                         | 375 |
| A/C filter .....                                    | 377 |
| Replacing key<br>battery .....                      | 379 |
| Checking and replacing<br>fuse .....                | 381 |

### 10-4. Specifications

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance data ....  | 385 |
| Fuel information ..... | 396 |

# Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of car

**The following operations help to protect the exterior trims of the car and keep them in the best condition:**

- Rinse the body, wheelhouse and underbody with plenty of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Wipe the body with a sponge or a piece of soft cloth (such as suede cloth).
- Clean the part with the traces that are difficult to remove using detergents and rinse it thoroughly with water.
- Remove water.
- In case of aging of the waterproof coating, wax the car.

Make sure that the surface of the car is clean and free of water beads and the body is cooled before waxing the body.

---

### ■ Automatic car washing

- Fold the exterior rearview mirrors before washing the car. Rinse the front part of the car first. Be sure to unfold the exterior rearview mirrors before driving.
- The brushes used at the automatic washing station may scratch the surface of the car and damage the paint.

### ■ High-pressure car washing

- Do not place the nozzle for car washing too close to the window.
- Before car washing, check that the fuel filler cap is properly closed.

### ■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove dirt with neutral detergent immediately after it is adhered to the wheels. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive detergents. Do not use highly corrosive or strong detergents.
- Do not wash the wheels with detergent when they are very hot (e.g. after driving for long distance in hot weather).
- After washing the wheels with detergent, rinse them immediately.

### ■ Bumper

Do not scrub the bumper with abrasive detergent.

**WARNING****■ Washing car**

Do not rinse the interior of the engine compartment with water, otherwise the electrical components may be short-circuited, possibly resulting in a fire.

**■ Precautions for exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gas will make the exhaust pipe very hot.

When washing the car, do not touch the exhaust pipe before it is cooled sufficiently to avoid scalding.

**CAUTION**

■ **Preventing aging of body and body paint and corrosion of body and components (such as aluminum wheels)**

- Wash the car immediately after the following conditions occur:
  - Driving by the sea
  - Driving on saline-alkali roads
  - Paintwork contaminated with coal tar or tree sap
  - Dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings fallen on the paintwork
  - Driving in areas contaminated with coal ash, oil fumes, mineral dust, iron dust or chemical substances
  - Severe dust or mud buildup on the car
  - Liquids such as benzene and gasoline splashed on the paintwork
- Repair the paint promptly in case of peeling-off or scratch.
- To prevent the wheels from corrosion, remove dirt from them and store them in a place with low humidity.

■ **Cleaning the logo**

Wipe the logo on the engine hood with clean water or neutral cleaner. Do not wash the logo with alcohol or alcohol-containing liquid, phenol, anisole and other organic solvents, otherwise the logo is prone to crack.

■ **Cleaning the lamp**

- Be careful when cleaning the lamp. Do not use organic cleaners or hard brushes to clean the lamp, otherwise the lamp surface may be damaged.
- Do not wax the lamp surface, otherwise the lamp shade may be damaged.
- Wipe and clean the lamp surface with clean water or neutral cleaner. Do not wash the logo with alcohol or other organic solvents such as alcohol-containing liquid, phenol and anisole, and high-effective cleaner such as adhesive remover and asphalt cleaner, otherwise it is easily cracked and discolored.
- Do not use winter windshield washer fluid with antifreeze to clean the rear windshield in hot weather of 25°C or more, which may corrode the rear lamp surface and cause cracks.



# Cleaning and protecting interior trims of car

**The following operations help to protect the interior trims of the car and keep them in the best condition:**

■ **Protecting interior trims of car**

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Dampen a piece of cloth with warm water and wipe the dirty surface.

■ **Cleaning leather part**

- Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner.
- Dampen a piece of soft cloth with diluted detergent and wipe off the remaining dirt and dust through wiping.  
Use a neutral wool detergent solution with a diluted concentration of about 5%.
- Wring the damp cloth and wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- Wipe off any residual moisture on the surface with a piece of dry soft cloth, and dry the leather in a cool and ventilated place.

■ **Cleaning artificial leather part**

- Remove floating dust with a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply neutral soapy solution to the artificial leather part.
- Soak the artificial leather part in the soapy solution for a few minutes, and wipe off the dirt and soapy solution with a piece of clean damp cloth.

■ **Cleaning wooden part**

- Gently wipe off the dust on the surface of wooden trims using cotton gauze.
- Gently wipe off the dirt on the surface of wooden trims using cotton gauze wet with a little neutral soapy solution.

---

■ **Maintaining leather part**

It is recommended that you clean the interior trims at least twice a year to maintain their quality.

■ **Maintaining wooden part**

It is recommended that you maintain the surface of wooden part at any time according to their condition.

### ■ Cleaning carpet

Clean the carpet with a proper foam cleaner available in the market. Apply the foam with a sponge or brush, scrub the carpet in overlapping circular motions, do not add water, and keep the carpet as dry as possible to achieve the best effect.

### ■ Seat belt

Clean the seat belt using a piece of cloth or sponge wet with neutral cleaner and lukewarm water. Regularly check the seat belt for excessive wear, damage or scratches.



### **WARNING**

#### ■ Preventing entry of water into car

- Do not spill liquids into the interior of the car, otherwise it may cause malfunctions or fires in electrical components.
- Do not let the airbag components or wires in the car get wet, otherwise accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag may be caused, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When applying film to the front windshield or cleaning the interior trim, pay special attention to preventing water from entering the instrument panel, otherwise the electronic components in the instrument panel are prone to damage, resulting in a car fault.

#### ■ Cleaning interior trims (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polishing wax or polishing cleaner to clean the instrument panel, otherwise the instrument panel may reflect light on the windshield, which obstructs the driver's visibility, causing serious injury or even death.



## CAUTION

### ■ Cleaner

- Do not use the following cleaners, otherwise the interior trims may be discolored or the paintwork may be streaked or damaged:  
Organics such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dyes and bleaches.
- Do not use polishing wax or polishing cleaner to clean the instrument panel, otherwise the paintwork of the instrument panel or other interior parts.

### ■ Preventing damage to leather surface

To prevent damage and aging of the leather surface, please observe the following precautions:

- Wipe off the dust and dirt on the leather surface in time.
- Do not expose the car to direct sunlight for a long time. Park the car in a cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic or waxy articles on the leather trim, as they may stick to the leather surface when the interior temperature increases significantly.
- If too much moisture remains on the seat surface, the leather will be hardened, shrunk or deformed.

### ■ Preventing entry of water into floor

Do not clean the floor with water.

If the electrical components under the floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged, and the body may be rusted.

### ■ Cleaning inner side of rear windshield

- Do not clean the rear windshield with glass cleaner, otherwise its defogger heating wires may be damaged. Dampen a piece of cloth with warm water and gently wipe the rear windshield in a direction parallel to the heating wires.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wires.

# Precautions for maintenance

**To ensure the driving safety and economy, routine and regular maintenance are crucial.**

**As recommend by FAW, you should take the following maintenance measures:**

■ Regular maintenance

- Perform regular maintenance on the car according to the maintenance schedule.

The maintenance intervals are determined according to the mileage or time interval (whichever comes first) in the maintenance schedule.

It is recommended to perform maintenance items even if the specified maintenance interval has been exceeded.

- Where can you have your car maintained?

An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is the most ideal service provider for maintenance.

The authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has advanced maintenance tools, equipment and genuine spare parts for the maintenance and service of your car, and all after-sales service personnel have received professional management and technical training to ensure rapid and efficient completion of car maintenance and repair, so that your car can always have good technical performance.

The authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has invested significantly in special tools and maintenance equipment, which helps to provide better service for you.

With the service concept of "efficient, reasonable and value-added", the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is committed to thoroughly performing all maintenance items for your car.

Rubber hoses (for cooling, heating, brake and fuel systems) should be checked by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses will be degraded over time, which will cause expansion, wear or rupture. Therefore, if any signs of deterioration or damage are observed in the hoses, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement.

### ■ Precautions for maintenance by yourself

#### Can the car be maintained by yourself?

If you have abundant basic knowledge of car structure, inspection and maintenance and some basic tools, you can perform routine inspection and maintenance yourself. Simple instructions for maintenance by yourself are covered in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work requires special maintenance equipment and professional skills and it is preferably performed by a qualified technician. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, it is still recommended that you contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for standardized repair and maintenance. The dealer will record the maintenance information of your car and help you apply for warranty service.

### ■ Does your car need to be repaired?

Pay attention to changes in the performance and sound of the car, as well as visual warnings indicating maintenance requirements. Some important signs are provided below:

- Engine misfire, unstable operation or "bang" sound.
- Noticeable decrease in power.
- Abnormal sound of engine.
- Liquid leakage under the car. (Water dripping after using the A/C and drainage from the exhaust pipe after cooling is normal.)
- Change in the exhaust sound. (It indicates potential carbon monoxide leakage which is dangerous. In this case, open the windows and check the exhaust system immediately.)
- Flat tire, excessive tire noise during turning, or uneven tire wear.
- Pulling to one side during straight driving on a flat road.
- Abnormal sound related to the suspension component.
- Braking failure; soft brake pedal when being depressed; pedal almost touching the floor; pulling to one side during braking.
- Continuously high coolant temperature.

If you find any of the signs mentioned above, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for adjustment or repair as soon as possible.



## WARNING

### ■ **Improper maintenance**

Improper maintenance may cause serious damage to the car and serious personal injury or even death.

### ■ **Precautions for battery handling**

Battery terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause brain damage.

Be sure to wash your hands after handling.

### ■ **Waste engine oil**

It is proven that the chemical substances in waste engine oil can cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid long-time repeated contact. To protect your skin, be sure to wash it thoroughly with soap and water.

## Precautions for maintenance by yourself

**If the maintenance is to be carried out by yourself, correct procedures below must be followed.**

| Item                                          | Component and tool                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Battery status (see 366)                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warm water</li> <li>• Baking soda</li> <li>• Grease</li> <li>• Common wrench<br/>(For terminal bolts)</li> </ul>               |
| Coolant level (see 361)                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automobile long-life coolant</li> <li>• Funnel (for adding coolant only)</li> </ul>                                            |
| Engine oil level (see 358)                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Genuine engine oil or equivalent of FAW</li> <li>• Cleaning cloth or paper, funnel<br/>(For adding engine oil only)</li> </ul> |
| Brake fluid level (see 363)                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Genuine brake fluid of FAW</li> <li>• Cleaning cloth or paper, funnel<br/>(For adding brake fluid only)</li> </ul>             |
| Fuse (see 381)                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuse of the same amperage rating as the original one</li> </ul>                                                                |
| Radiator, condenser and intercooler (see 362) | —                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Tire pressure (see 373)                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tire pressure gauge</li> <li>• Compressed air source</li> </ul>                                                                |
| Washer fluid (see 364)                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Washer fluid with antifreeze<br/>(For use in winter)</li> <li>• Funnel</li> </ul>                                              |

**WARNING**

Many machineries are installed in the engine compartment. They may rotate, get hot, or become energized suddenly. To avoid serious personal injury, please pay attention to the following matters.

■ **Handling parts in engine compartment**

- If it is necessary to run the engine when working under the hood, be sure to remove all jewelry (especially ring, bracelet, watch and necklace), bow tie, scarf and other loose clothing before approaching the engine or the electric fan that may run at any time.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. immediately after driving, as they may be very hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Before opening the hood, be sure to shut down the engine, apply the EPB, set the shift lever to P position, turn off the engine switch, carry the key with you, and wait till the engine cools down.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan and engine drive belt.
- Do not leave any articles in the engine compartment.  
After the inspection or maintenance in the engine compartment, do not leave any articles such as tool or cloth in it, otherwise engine damage or fire may occur, resulting in an accident.
- Do not smoke, generate sparks, or expose open flames in areas near the fuel or battery.
- Be especially careful when handling the battery. The battery contains toxic and corrosive sulfate.
- Be careful when handling the brake fluid as it may injure your hands or eyes and damage the paintwork. If the brake fluid spills on your hands or into your eyes, rinse the affected area with the fluid immediately with clean water. If you still feel unwell, seek medical attention.

■ **Working near electric fan or radiator grille**

Make sure that the engine switch is turned off. If the engine is turned on, the electric cooling fan may run automatically when the A/C is started or the coolant temperature is very high.

■ **Goggles**

Wear goggles to prevent objects from flying into your eyes or fluids from splashing into your eyes.



**CAUTION****■ Precautions after removal of air cleaner**

If the car is driven with the air cleaner removed, dirt in the air may cause excessive wear of the engine. At the same time, backfire may also cause the engine compartment to catch fire.

**■ Too low or high brake fluid level**

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the brake pads are worn or the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is relatively high, which is normal. If the brake fluid reservoir needs to be filled with brake fluid frequently, it means that there may be a serious fault. In this case, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection.

### Particulate filter

**The particulate filter filters out particulate matter from exhaust gas, and the particulate filter can clean itself under normal driving conditions (continuous driving at a speed of more than 30 km/h).**

Long-term low speed driving, repeat low-temperature cold starting or long-term idling of vehicle may result in the excessive carbon load in the particulate filter, the particulate filter may not be able to clean itself and issue an alarm reminder.

- When GPF cleaning warning lamp  (green) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Exhaust air needs to be cleaned by driving, see the manual" simultaneously, it indicates that the particulate filter needs to be cleaned by driving. At this time, the engine can be warmed up (water temperature reaches 90 °C), and the vehicle is accelerated to 60 km/h or more for normal driving.

Notice:

1. After driving according to the above method for a certain period of time, the GPF cleaning warning lamp  (green) will turn off and the cleaning is complete;
2. The required cleaning time may vary depending on vehicle condition (such as 0.5 h to 1 h or more);
3. To expedite the cleaning process, increase the vehicle speed and occasionally pressing the accelerator pedal deeply for acceleration;
4. When driving is not possible as described above, the vehicle speed should be increased as much as possible.

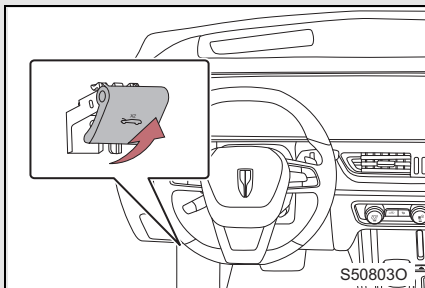
The duration of this process may extend based on vehicle condition, (e.g. driving for 1 h).

- When GPF fault warning lamp  (yellow) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Please go to 4S store to clean exhaust air particulate filter" simultaneously, it indicates that the particulate filter cannot be cleaned effectively by driving, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for treatment.
- When GPF fault warning lamp  (yellow), and multifunction display prompts "Please go to 4S store to check and repair exhaust air particulate filter" simultaneously, it indicates that the carbon load in particulate filter has seriously exceeded the limit, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for treatment.

## 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

### Engine hood

**Open the hood through unlocking from the inside of the car.**



Pull the hood release handle in the car twice to open the hood.



#### **WARNING**

##### **■ Inspection before driving**

Check that the hood is closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly, it may suddenly open during driving, which will cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.



#### **CAUTION**

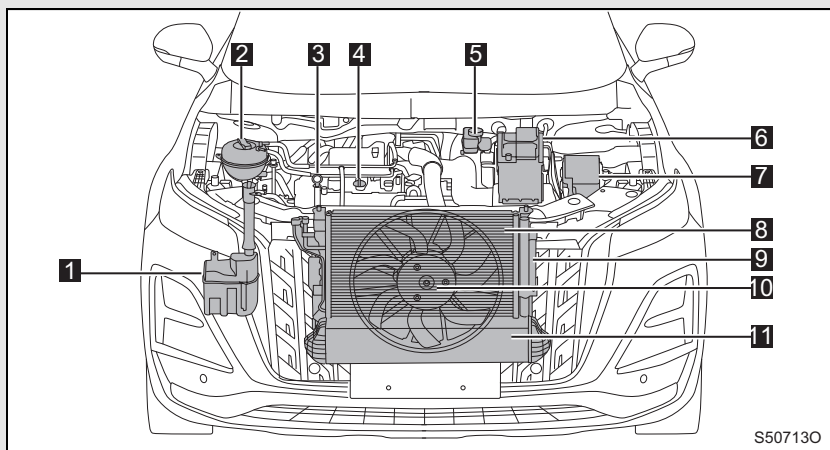
##### **■ Closing hood**

- Do not apply excessive force to prevent hood damage.
- Make sure that there are no items, such as tools left in the engine compartment before closing the hood.

## 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

# Engine compartment

Due to different model configurations, the picture is for reference only.



- 1** Washer fluid reservoir
- 3** Dipstick
- 5** Brake fluid reservoir
- 7** Fuse box
- 9** Radiator
- 11** Intercooler

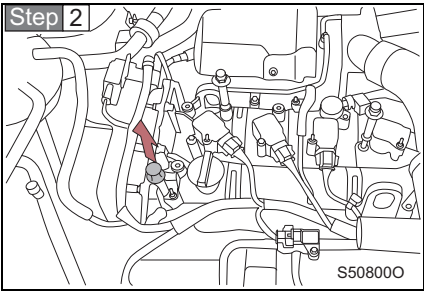
- 2** Coolant reservoir
- 4** Oil filler
- 6** Battery
- 8** Condenser
- 10** Cooling fan

## Oil

Check the oil level when the engine is kept at the operating temperature and the engine switch is turned off.

■ Checking oil

**Step 1** Park the vehicle on a flat ground. After shutting down the engine, wait more than 5min to allow the oil to flow back to the bottom of the engine.

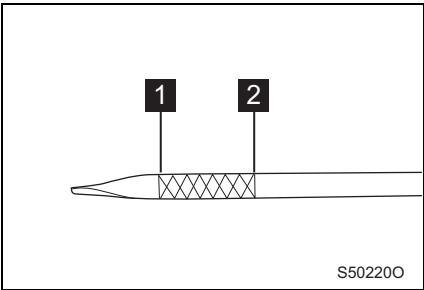


Place a piece of clean cloth under the end of the dipstick and pull out the dipstick.

**Step 3** Wipe the dipstick.

**Step 4** Reinsert the dipstick to the bottom.

**Step 5** Place a piece of clean cloth under the end of the dipstick, pull it out, and check the oil level.



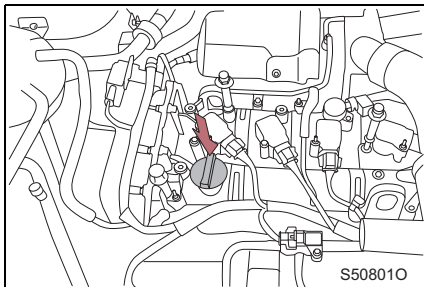
**1** LOW

**2** FULL

The oil level must be between LOW and FULL. Address any excess or insufficient oil promptly.

**Step 6** Wipe the dipstick, and reinsert it to the bottom.

### ■ Adding oil



If the oil level is below or near the LOW mark, add oil of the same grade as that in the engine.

Before adding oil, be sure to determine the oil grade and prepare the necessary articles.

**Step 1** Unscrew the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

**Step 2** Add oil slowly, and check the dipstick.

**Step 3** Install the oil filler cap, and turn it clockwise until it is tightened.

### ■ Recommended oil grade

It is recommended to use 5W-30 oil.

Do not use the engine oil with high viscosity at a very low temperature, otherwise it may be difficult to start the engine. It is recommended that you use the oil of the recommended graded according to the need of your car.

For more details, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### ■ Oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil is consumed during driving. Oil consumption may increase and engine oil may need to be re-added during maintenance when:

- When using a new engine, such as after purchasing a new car or replacing the engine
- When using oil of low quality or improper viscosity
- The engine is running at high speed, or the car is driven under heavy load or frequent acceleration or deceleration
- The engine is idling for a long time, or the car is frequently driven on congested roads



## WARNING

### ■ Precautions for disposal of waste oil

- Waste oil contains potentially hazardous substances that can cause diseases such as dermatitis and skin cancer, therefore, be sure to avoid long-time or frequent contact with oil. Thoroughly wash it off your skin with soap and water.
- Always dispose of waste oil and oil filter in a safe manner that complies with the environmental protection regulations. Do not dispose of waste oil and oil filter in the domestic garbage, in sewers or on the ground. For information on oil recycling or disposal, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Do not keep waste oil within the reach of children.



## CAUTION

### ■ Preventing serious damage to engine

Regularly check the oil level.

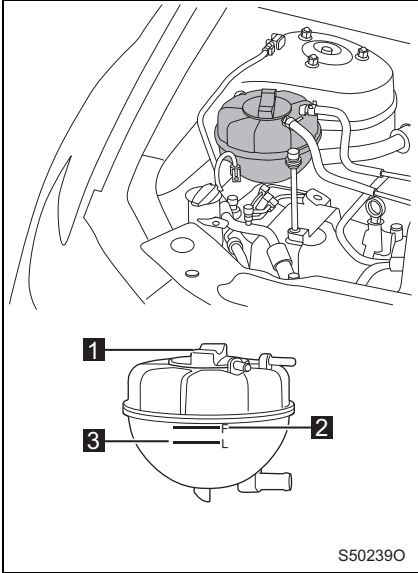
### ■ Precautions for oil change

- Do not splash oil on the parts of the car. If oil is poured on the engine gear train, it is necessary to thoroughly clean it and replace the belt; Oil spills at other positions in the engine needs to be cleaned with detergent to ensure that there is no oil residue.
- Do not overfill the oil, otherwise the engine will be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you add oil to the car.
- Make sure that the oil filler cap is tightened properly.



## Coolant

If the coolant level in the coolant reservoir is between the "F" (highest) and "L" (lowest) marks, it is normal.



1 Reservoir cover

2 "F" (highest)

3 "L" (lowest)

If the coolant level is below the "F" mark, add the coolant to the normal level.

### ■ Decrease of coolant level shortly after the coolant is added

Visually check the components such as radiator, coolant reservoir and cooling pipe.

If no leakage is found, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the cooling system.

### ■ Selecting coolant

Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year.

For more details of coolant, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### WARNING

#### ■ High coolant temperature or hot radiator/condenser

- Do not add coolant, because hot coolant is very dangerous and may cause scalding.
- Do not remove the coolant reservoir cover.  
There may be pressure inside the cooling system, therefore, hot coolant may be sprayed out after the coolant reservoir cover is removed, causing scalding or other injuries.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Adding coolant

Add the coolant specified by FAW to ensure normal lubrication, anti-corrosion and cooling performance.  
Please read the instructions on the label of the coolant.

#### ■ Accidental splashing of coolant

Always remove the coolant with water to avoid damaging the parts or paint.

## Radiator, condenser and intercooler

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler, and remove any foreign matters.

If the radiator, condenser or intercooler is excessively dirty or abnormal, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the car.



### WARNING

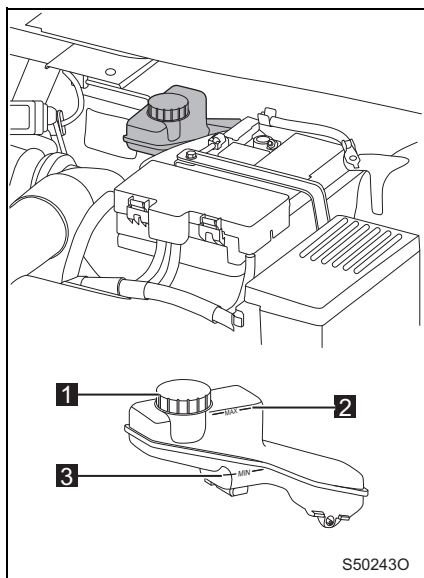
#### ■ Engine at high temperature

Do not touch the radiator, condenser and intercooler to prevent the risk of scalding.

## Turbocharged engine

- Check, remove or replace the turbocharger only after shutdown of the engine and cooling of the turbocharger.
- Do not drop any oil on a hot turbocharger surface, otherwise a fire may be caused.
- Do not cool the turbocharger by splashing water on its hot surface, otherwise it may be damaged.
- After the turbocharged engine is started, it is recommended to run it at idle speed for 3min to ensure that the turbocharger is lubricated properly.

## Brake fluid



**1** Brake fluid reservoir cover

**2** "MAX" (highest)

**3** "MIN" (lowest)

If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, add the brake fluid to the normal level.

### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Precautions for addition of brake fluid**

- It is very dangerous if the brake fluid is sprayed out. If the brake fluid enters the eyes, rinse them with plenty of water, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not spray the brake fluid onto your body or the electrical parts in the engine compartment, otherwise it is likely to cause personal injuries or a fire.

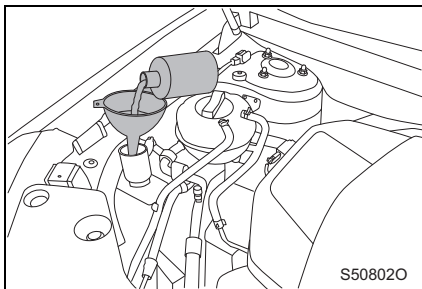
#### ■ **Too low brake fluid level**

- It is very dangerous if the brake fluid level is too low. A too low fluid level indicates wear of the brake lining or leakage of the brake system. The brake may fail, resulting in a serious accident. If the fluid level is too low, check the brake.
- If the fluid level is too low, add the brake fluid until it reaches the "MAX" mark. Before adding the brake fluid, thoroughly clean the parts around the brake fluid reservoir cover.

### **CAUTION**

- The brake fluid will damage the paintwork. If the brake fluid is accidentally splashed onto the paintwork, wipe it off immediately.
- Using non-specified brake fluid can lead to damage in the system. Additionally, mixing different types of brake fluid may cause damage to the system.
- If the brake fluid needs to be added or changed, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## **Washer fluid**



If any of the washers does not work or an alarm message appears on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster, the washer fluid reservoir may be empty. In this case, add the washer fluid in time.

**WARNING****■ Adding washer fluid**

Do not add the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running. Otherwise, if the washer fluid splashes on the engine, a fire may be incurred by the alcohol in the washer fluid.

**CAUTION****■ Do not use any fluids other than the washer fluid**

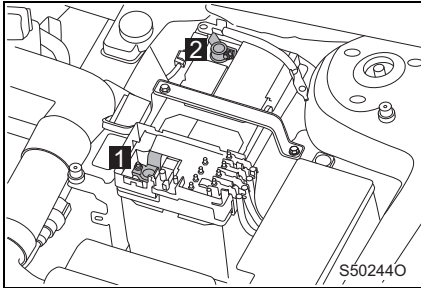
Do not substitute soapy water or coolant for washer fluid, otherwise it may result in damage to the paintwork.

**■ Diluting washer fluid**

If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

Refer to the freezing temperature indicated on the label of the washer fluid reservoir.

## Battery



Make sure that there is no corrosion on battery terminals, no looseness in connections, no cracks in external parts, and no looseness in fixing clips.

**1** Positive terminal

**2** Negative terminal

### ■ Precautions during installation

- When connecting the battery, avoid connecting the terminal cables reversely, otherwise the electrical equipment in the car may be damaged.
- During storage, transportation and installation of the battery, prevent the positive and negative terminals from contacting with each other. For example, the metal wrench for connecting is likely to touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time. In this case, the battery may be short-circuited, causing a direct failure.
- Due to the small vent holes in the battery, do not place it on its side or upside down during storage, handling and installation, to avoid leakage of electrolyte.
- Replace the battery with the one of the same model.
- If the wiring clips are oxidized or dirty when the battery is replaced, remove the oxide layer or dirt with sandpaper, and apply Vaseline to the wiring clips and battery terminals before connecting.
- During installation, connect the positive terminal and then the negative terminal, and during removal, disconnect the negative terminal and then the positive terminal, to avoid the risk of short circuit.

### ■ Precautions before charging

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- When charging the battery installed on the car, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the ground wire.
- When connecting or disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery, make sure that the power switch on the charger is turned off.

### ■ Precautions during use

- Pay attention to keep the air outlet of the battery clean to avoid blockage.
- Charge the battery in the following conditions:
  - Frequent short-time use or frequent starts of the car.
  - Frequent driving on congested roads.
  - A high number of electrical devices being used in the car.
  - Frequent driving at night.
  - No use of the car for a long time.
  - Failure to turn off the lamp after parking.
  - Failure to close the doors tightly during parking.
  - Long-time use of the A/C, audio, lamp and other electrical equipment without starting the engine.
- If the car is stored for more than 30 days, perform the following operations to maintain the normal charging state of the battery:
  - Disconnect the negative terminal ground wire of the battery to prevent battery discharge caused by additional current discharge.
  - Charge the battery once every 20-45 days.
  - Before the normal use of the car, connect the power supply and keep the car still for a certain period of time to ensure that the idle stop-start function works normally.

### ■ Power management system

- When the battery power is low, the system will limit some comfort functions to ensure the starting performance of the car. At this time, these functions will not work according to the working state set by the user. Once the battery power is restored to a safe range, the limited comfort functions will automatically return to the state set by the user.
- The power management system can adjust the output voltage of the generator in real time, obtain the battery status information and control the optimal charging voltage to reduce the fuel consumption appropriately while improving the power performance of the car.

**WARNING**

■ **Chemical substances in the battery**

The battery contains toxic corrosive sulfuric acid and may generate flammable and explosive hydrogen gas. To reduce the possibility of serious personal injury, be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not allow tools to contact battery terminals, so as to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or use open flames near the battery.
- Avoid splashing electrolyte into eyes and on skin or clothing.
- Do not inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear goggles when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ **Safe place for battery charging**

Charge the battery in an open place. Never charge it in a poorly ventilated garage or an enclosed place.

■ **Emergency measures for handling of electrolyte**

- Accidental splashing of electrolyte into eyes  
Rinse your eyes with water for at least 15 min and seek medical attention immediately. If possible, continue to wash your eyes with a piece of absorbent sponge or cloth on the way to hospital.
- Splashing of electrolyte on skin  
Thoroughly wash the part on which electrolyte is splashed. If you have a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- Splashing of electrolyte on clothing  
Electrolyte may penetrate clothing and contact with the skin. Take off clothing promptly and adopt the above measures if necessary.
- Accidental swallowing of electrolyte  
Drink plenty of water or milk, take magnesia lotion, agitated raw eggs or vegetable oil, and seek medical attention immediately.

■ **Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side**

The disconnected negative (-) terminal may come into contact with the positive (+) terminal, resulting in a short circuit and serious injury or even death.



**CAUTION****■ Precautions for battery charging**

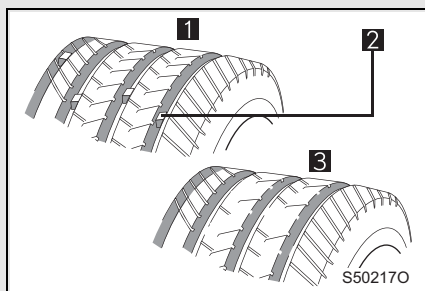
Do not charge the battery when the car is started. Be sure to turn off all accessories.

## 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

### Tire

**Replace the tire or perform tire rotation according to the wear condition of the tread.**

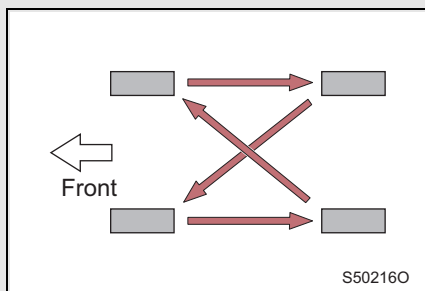
#### ■ Tire inspection



- 1** New tread
- 2** Tread wear indicator
- 3** Worn tread

If the tread pattern wears down to the tread wear indicator surface, replace the tire (the picture is for reference only).

#### ■ Tire rotation



Perform tire rotation as shown in the figure.

It is recommended to perform tire rotation every 8,000~10,000 km to achieve even tire wear and extend the tire life.

#### Note:

After the tire rotation, it is necessary to configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer if necessary.

### ■ Measures for protection against wheel fault

- When driving over curbs or similar obstacles, keep a slow speed in the vertical direction of the obstacles as much as possible.
- Be careful not to let the tires contact with grease, oil and fuel.
- Regularly check the damage of tires (such as splitting, crack or bulging), and remove debris embedded in the grooves of the tire pattern.

### ■ Precautions for tire storage

- Before removing the tire, mark the tire to indicate the rolling direction, and refit the tire and align it with the mark to maintain the rotation direction and the dynamic balance of the wheel.
- Store the removed wheels and tires in a cool and dry place, preferably in a dark place not exposed to direct sunlight.

### ■ Hidden damage

- Damage to tires and rims often occurs in a hidden way, and abnormal vibration or deviation of the car during driving may indicate a faulty wheel. In this case, drive the car to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of wheels as soon as possible.

### ■ When to replace the tire

Replace the tire when:

- The tire has any defect such as cut, fracture, crack with exposed fabric ply or bulging.
- The tire leaks frequently or cannot be repaired due to other damage.

### ■ Tire life

Avoid using tires that have been in use for six years, and if you have to use them, drive at low speed with extreme caution.

### ■ When driving in winter

Winter tires or all-season tires can improve the driving and braking performance in winter road surface conditions; It is recommended to switch to winter tires for the vehicle when the temperature is below 7 °C or in winter road surface conditions.

### ■ Winter tires

If the tread depth of winter tires reaches 4 mm or less, the anti-skid performance will be significantly reduced.



## WARNING

### ■ Precautions for tire inspection or replacement

To avoid transmission part damage which will affect the control performance of the car, be sure to observe the following precautions:

- Do not use tires from different manufacturers, of different models and with different tread patterns or tread wear degrees.
- Do not use tires not recommended by FAW.
- Do not mix tires with different structures such as radial, bias-belted and bias-ply tires in use.
- Do not mix summer tires, all-season tires and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on other vehicles.



## CAUTION

### ■ Driving on uneven roads

When the car is driven on soft or bumpy roads, extra care shall be taken.

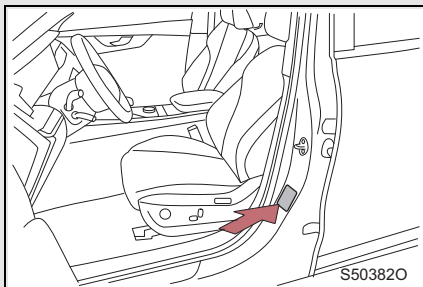
On such roads, tires are prone to bulging due to impact, and they may be damaged eventually.

### ■ Decreased tire pressure during driving

Do not continue driving, as this may result in complete tire and/or wheel damage.

# Tire pressure

**Be sure to maintain a proper tire pressure. Check the tire pressure at least once a month.**



The tire pressure label is located under the B-pillar lock pin on the driver's side.

### ■ Consequences of incorrect tire pressure

Too low tire pressure:

- The rolling resistance and fuel consumption are increased.
- The maneuverability and stability of the car are reduced.
- Damage and high temperature may be caused, resulting in tire burst. When the tire pressure is seriously insufficient, the tire may be detached from the rim, reducing the safety.
- The tire is worn on both sides.

Too high tire pressure:

- The comfort of the car is reduced.
- The middle of the tire is worn excessively.
- The tire is prone to internal crack and burst when being impacted.

### ■ Guidelines for tire pressure inspection

Even if your car is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can remind you of the tire pressure status in time, please check the tire pressure in time.

When checking the tire pressure, please observe the following precautions:

- Check the tire only after it has cooled down.

If the car has been parked for at least 3 h, or has not driven for more than 1.5 km, carry out the inspection to obtain the accurate tire pressure reading.

- Always use a tire pressure gauge.

The tire appearance may sometimes be misleading. Additionally, the riding comfort and maneuverability may be reduced even if the tire pressure is relatively low.

- Do not deflate or depressurize the tire after driving. The tire pressure may increase after driving, which is normal.
- Do not overload the car.

The weight of the driver, passengers and luggage should be evenly distributed to keep the car balanced.



### WARNING

#### ■ **Correct inflation is the key to tire protection**

Be sure to maintain a proper tire pressure, otherwise the following conditions may occur:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor maneuverability
- Tire burst after overheating
- Bead sealing performance degradation
- Wheel deformation or detachment of the tire from the wheel
- Potential tire damage due to poor road conditions

#### ■ **Do not drive the car at an improper tire pressure**

It is dangerous to drive the car with improper tire pressure. An improper tire pressure may affect the maneuverability and result in an accident.



### CAUTION

#### ■ **Precautions for inspection and adjustment of tire pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap.

If the valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may enter the valve and cause air leakage, resulting in an accident.

If the valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

### Wheel

**If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, replace it. Otherwise, the tire may be detached from the rim or you may lose control of the car.**

#### ■ Selecting wheel

When replacing the wheel, ensure that the newly installed wheel matches the original in terms of bearing capacity, diameter, rim width and offset.

The wheel for replacement can be provided by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

FAW recommends not to use the following types of wheels:

- Wheels of different sizes or types.
- Old wheels.
- Bent wheels that have been straightened.

#### ■ Considerations for aluminum wheel

- Be sure to use the wheel nuts and wrench specially designed for the aluminum wheel.
- During tire rotation, maintenance or replacement, check and confirm the tightness of the wheel nuts.
- When tire chains are used, be careful not to damage the aluminum rim.
- Only use the balance weight or equivalent product specified by FAW to balance the wheel.



## **WARNING**

### ■ **Replacing wheel**

Do not use the wheel of a different model than the original one installed on the car, otherwise you may lose control of the car.

### ■ **Installing wheel nut**

- Tighten the wheel nut until the cone part comes into contact with the wheel nut seat of the rim.

- Never apply oil or grease to wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts too tight, resulting in damage to the wheel nut threads. In addition, oil or grease may cause wheel nuts to become loose and cause the wheel to fall off, thus causing accidents, serious injury or even death. Please remove all oil or grease from wheel nuts.

### ■ **Do not use defective wheels**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Otherwise, tires may leak during driving, resulting in an accident.



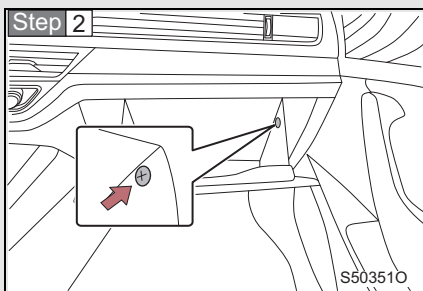
## 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

### A/C filter

**Regularly replace the A/C filter to maintain the A/C efficiency.**

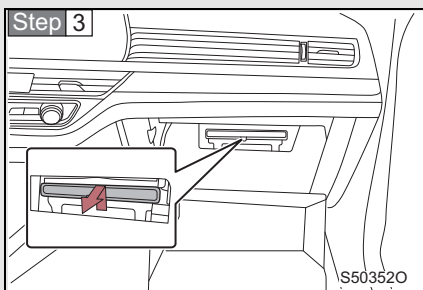
#### ■ Replacing A/C filter

**Step 1** Turn off the engine switch.

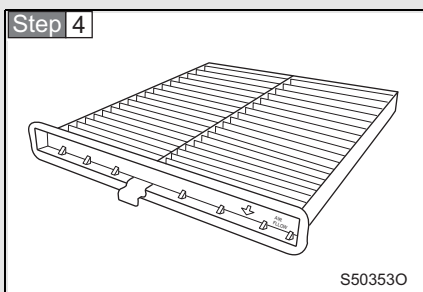


Open the glove box.

Remove the plastic fixing bolts on the left and right sides of the glove box, detach the limiter, and pull down the glove box to the position where the filter can be removed.



Remove the A/C filter cover and filter, and replace the filter with a new one.



Install a new A/C filter of the same model.

The arrow mark on the filter should face toward the area under the car.

■ **Replacement interval of A/C filter**

In dusty or heavy traffic areas, the replacement interval may need to be shortened.

■ **Significant reduction of airflow at air vent**

The filter may be blocked. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

■ **A/C filter**

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



**CAUTION**

■ **Using A/C system**

Make sure that the filter is installed.

If the A/C system is used without a filter, it may be damaged.

■ **Removing filter**

Do not replace the A/C filter when the blower is working, otherwise personal injuries may be caused.

## 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

### Replacing key battery

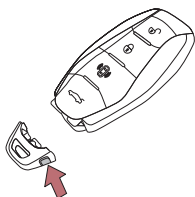
If the battery power of the smart key is low, replace it with a new one.

■ The following part is required:

- CR2032 lithium battery

■ Replacing smart key battery

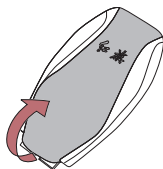
Step 1



S507950

Press the unlocking button to detach the end cover of the key.

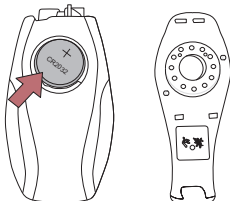
Step 2



S506600

Detach the rear cover of the key.

Step 3



S506610

1 Take out the old battery.

Insert a new battery with the + terminal facing upward.

2 Return the rear cover and end cover of the key to the original positions.

■ **If the battery power of the smart key is low, the following conditions may occur**

- Failure of wireless remote control function.
- Reduction of effective range.
- Failure of PEPS function.
- Failure of smart start function.

■ **Using CR2032 lithium battery**

- It is recommended to replace the battery with the same or equivalent product recommended by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Always dispose of the old battery in accordance with the local laws and regulations.



**WARNING**

■ **Replaced battery and other parts**

Keep the parts out of reach of children.

These small parts may cause suffocation if swallowed by children.



**CAUTION**

■ **To ensure that the remote control key can work normally after the battery is replaced**

Be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid an accident.

- Always dry your hands before operating the smart key to prevent rusting of the battery.
- Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote control key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

## 10-3. Maintenance by yourself

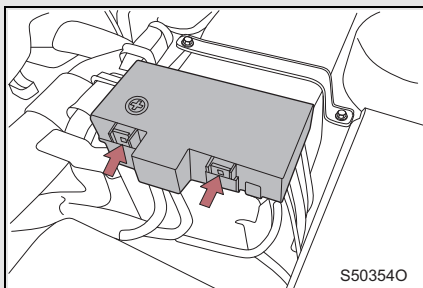
### Checking and replacing fuse

**If any electrical component fails to work, a fuse may be blown. In this case, check and replace the fuse if necessary.**

**Step 1** Turn off the engine switch.

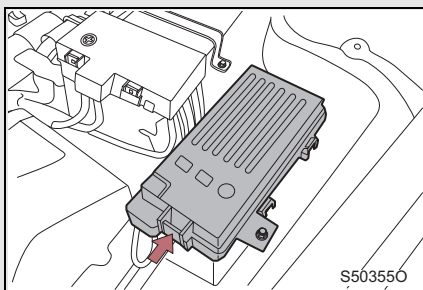
**Step 2** The fuses are installed in the following positions. Check the fuses as follows.

#### ■ Engine compartment (A-type)



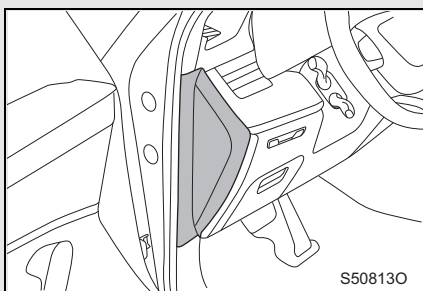
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

#### ■ Engine compartment (B-type)



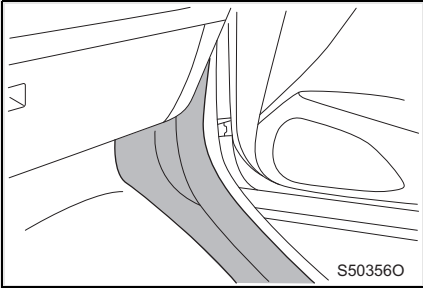
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

#### ■ Driver's instrument panel



Remove the instrument panel left cover.

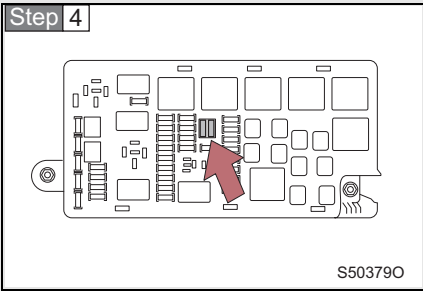
■ Right front door sill trim panel



Remove the right front door sill trim panel.

It is recommended to contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement of the fuse in this position.

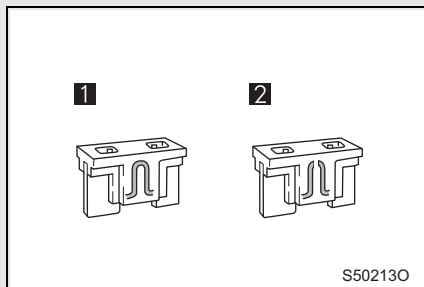
**Step 3** After a system fault occurs, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inquire about the fuses that need to be checked.



Remove the fuse with the auxiliary removal tool.

**Step 5** Check whether the fuse is blown.

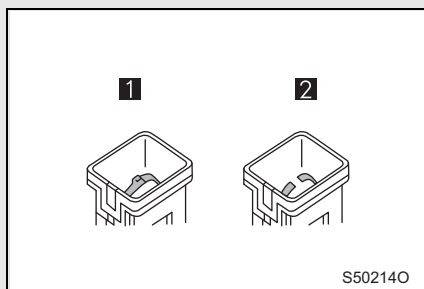
► A-type



**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

► B-type



**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

Replace the fuse with a new fuse of the amperage rating approved by FAW.

### ■ Distribution and amperage rating of fuses

For the distribution and amperage rating of fuses, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for confirmation.

### ■ Precautions after fuse replacement

- If the electrical function still does not work after the fuse is replaced, further inspection may be required. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- If the newly installed fuse blows out again, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the car.

### ■ Circuit overloading

The fuse will blow out, to prevent damage to the entire harness.



## WARNING

### ■ Preventing system fault or car fire

Be sure to observe the following precautions, otherwise car damage, fire or personal injury may be caused.

- Do not use a fuse with an amperage rating higher or lower than specified.
- Be sure to use the same or equivalent product recommended by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.  
Do not substitute the fuse with a wire, even temporary replacement is strictly prohibited, otherwise serious damage or even a fire may be caused.
- Do not modify the fuse or fuse box.



## CAUTION

### ■ Precautions before fuse replacement

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to determine the cause of excessively high electrical load and have the car repaired.



10-4. Specifications

Maintenance data

Dimensions

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                 |       |                                        |
|-----------------|-------|----------------------------------------|
| Overall length  |       | 4,785 mm                               |
| Overall width   |       | 1,905 mm                               |
| Overall height  |       | 1,700 mm                               |
| Front overhang  |       | 973 mm                                 |
| Rear overhang   |       | 942 mm                                 |
| Wheelbase       |       | 2,870 mm                               |
| Wheel track     | Front | 18 inch: 1,626 mm<br>20 inch: 1,616 mm |
|                 | Rear  | 18 inch: 1,622 mm<br>20 inch: 1,612 mm |
| Approach angle  |       | 20°                                    |
| Departure angle |       | 23°                                    |

Seating capacity

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Seating capacity | 5 |
|------------------|---|

Drive mode

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC

|            |    |
|------------|----|
| Drive mode | FF |
|------------|----|

Model No.: CA6483HA6TD

|            |    |
|------------|----|
| Drive mode | F4 |
|------------|----|

Vehicle mass

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC

|                             |       |          |
|-----------------------------|-------|----------|
| Kerb mass                   |       | 1,755 kg |
| Gross vehicle weight rating |       | 2,205 kg |
| Axle load (full load)       | Front | 1,128 kg |
|                             | Rear  | 1,077 kg |

Model No.: CA6483HA6TD

|                             |       |          |
|-----------------------------|-------|----------|
| Kerb mass                   |       | 1,820 kg |
| Gross vehicle weight rating |       | 2,270 kg |
| Axle load (full load)       | Front | 1,148 kg |
|                             | Rear  | 1,122 kg |

Emission standard

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                   |            |
|-------------------|------------|
| Emission standard | China VI B |
|-------------------|------------|

Vehicle fuel consumption under specified test conditions

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC

|                                             |               |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Engine model                                | CA4GC20TD-35  |
| Combined fuel consumption for WLTC standard | 7.34 L/100 km |
| Fuel economy for SASO standard              | 17.5 km/L     |

## ■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TD

|                                             |               |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Engine model                                | CA4GC20TD-35  |
| Combined fuel consumption for WLTC standard | 7.79 L/100 km |
| Fuel economy for SASO standard              | 17.5 km/L     |

**CAUTION**■ **CAUTION WLTC/SASO standard**

- Due to different standards implemented in different countries/regions, the tested fuel consumption of the vehicle may vary. Please check the fuel consumption information according to the local implementation standards.

**Vehicle performance**

## ■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TC

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Maximum net power/rpm     | 180 kW/5,500 r/min            |
| Rated power/rpm           | 185 kW/5,500 r/min            |
| Maximum output torque/rpm | 380 N·m/(1,800 - 4,000) r/min |
| Maximum gradeability      | 40%                           |
| Maximum speed             | 215 km/h                      |

## ■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TD

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Maximum net power/rpm     | 180 kW/5,500 r/min            |
| Rated power/rpm           | 185 kW/5,500 r/min            |
| Maximum output torque/rpm | 380 N·m/(1,800 - 4,000) r/min |
| Maximum gradeability      | 40%                           |
| Maximum speed             | 210 km/h                      |

Front wheel alignment (no load)

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Front wheel camber        | -14' ± 30'                |
| Kingpin caster angle      | 6°44' ± 30'               |
| Kingpin inclination angle | 13°59' ± 45'              |
| Front wheel toe-in        | β=5' ± 5'    2β=10' ± 10' |

Rear wheel alignment (no load)

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Rear wheel camber | -49'±45'                   |
| Rear wheel toe-in | β=16' ± 5'    2β=32' ± 10' |

Suspension

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                  |                        |                  |                                                                                          |
|------------------|------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Front suspension | Type                   |                  | McPherson independent suspension                                                         |
|                  | Type of spring         |                  | Spiral spring                                                                            |
|                  | Type of shock absorber |                  | Double-cylinder hydro-pneumatic shock absorber/continuous damping control shock absorber |
|                  | Stabilizer bar         | Type<br>Diameter | Hollow stabilizer bar<br>Φ29.2 mm                                                        |
| Rear suspension  | Type                   |                  | Multi-link independent suspension                                                        |
|                  | Type of spring         |                  | Spiral spring                                                                            |
|                  | Type of shock absorber |                  | Double-cylinder hydro-pneumatic shock absorber/continuous damping control shock absorber |
|                  | Stabilizer bar         | Type<br>Diameter | Solid stabilizer bar<br>Φ20.6 mm                                                         |

## Specifications for new car running-in

The new car running-in mileage is 1,500 km. When the mileage is not more than 1,000 km, the engine speed should not be higher than 3/4 of the rated speed during driving; when the mileage is 1,000~1,500 km, the engine speed can be increased according to road conditions until the rated speed is reached.

## Vehicle identification

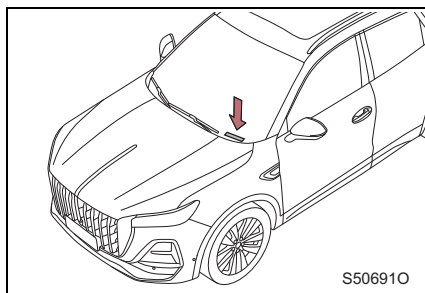
### ■ Manufacturer's nameplate

The location of the manufacturer's nameplate varies slightly depending on the vehicle configuration and is located on the left/right B-pillar.

### ■ Vehicle identification number

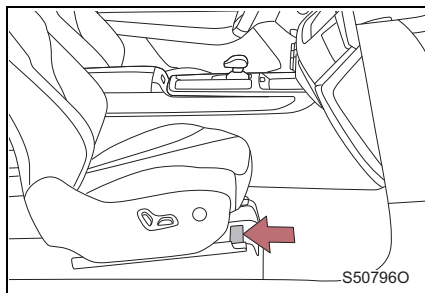
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identification of the car. As the primary identification number, the VIN is used for owner registration.

#### ► Top left of the instrument panel



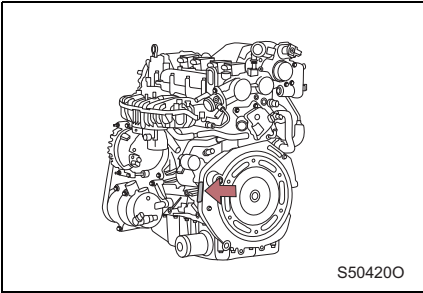
It is affixed under the windshield at the top left of the instrument panel.

#### ► Under the front passenger's seat



It is engraved under the front passenger's seat.

- Engine model and factory number
  - ▶ CA4GC20TD-35 engine



As shown in the figure, the engine number is engraved on the cylinder block.

Engine

|               |                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Model         | CA4GC20TD-35                                                                                                                                             |
| Type          | In-line, four-cylinder, four-stroke, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft, 16-valve, variable camshaft timing (VCT), GDI, turbocharged gasoline engine |
| Bore × stroke | 82.5 × 93 mm                                                                                                                                             |
| Displacement  | 1.989 L                                                                                                                                                  |

Fuel

■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                                    |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Fuel type                          | Gasoline    |
| Octane number                      | 95 or above |
| Fuel tank capacity (for reference) | 64 L        |

Lubrication system

■ CA4GC20TD-35 engine

|                                                                  |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Oil capacity (refill after draining)                             | 6 L     |
| Filling volume after change of oil and replacement of oil filter | 5.3 L   |
| Filling volume after independent change of oil                   | 5 L     |
| Oil grade                                                        | ACEA C3 |
| Oil viscosity                                                    | 5W-30   |

### Cooling system

■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|              |                                                                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Capacity     | 7 L                                                               |
| Coolant type | Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year (G30-91) |

### Ignition system

■ CA4GC20TD-35 engine

|                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| Spark plug     | 3707010-27L-A |
| Spark plug gap | 0.6 - 0.7 mm  |

### Electrical system

■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|         |                                      |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| Battery | 12 V, 80 Ah maintenance-free battery |
|---------|--------------------------------------|

A/C refrigerant

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                               |            |
|-------------------------------|------------|
| A/C refrigerant capacity      | 550 ± 25 g |
| A/C refrigerant specification | R134a      |

Transmission

Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                             |              |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| Transmission type           | 8AT          |
| Transmission fluid capacity | 6.3 ± 0.15 L |
| Transmission fluid type     | AW-1         |

 **CAUTION**

■ **Automatic transmission fluid**

- If the non-specified automatic transmission fluid is used, the gearshift effect will be poor or the clutch plate in the transmission will be burnt.
- Change the automatic transmission fluid only when necessary.

4WD power takeoff

Model No.: CA6483HA6TD

|                                 |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| Power takeoff oil capacity      | 0.3 ± 0.02 L |
| Power takeoff oil specification | SAE 80W/90   |



## Rear final drive

■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TD

|                               |               |
|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Final drive oil capacity      | 0.48 ± 0.03 L |
| Final drive oil specification | SAE 80W/90    |

## Brake system

■ Model No.: CA6483HA6TC, CA6483HA6TD

|                                                        |                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Free travel of brake pedal                             | ≤ 15 mm             |
| Travel of brake pedal                                  | 120 mm              |
| Brake fluid capacity                                   | Approximately 0.8 L |
| Brake fluid type<br>(In accordance with GB 12981-2012) | DOT4                |

## Reasonable usable range of brake linings

### ► Front

|                         |          |               |                                        |
|-------------------------|----------|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| Thickness of brake pad  | Standard | Total 18.7 mm | Thickness of friction material 11.5 mm |
|                         | Minimum  | Total 9.2 mm  | Thickness of friction material 2 mm    |
| Thickness of brake disc | Standard | 30 mm         |                                        |
|                         | Minimum  | 28 mm         |                                        |

► Rear

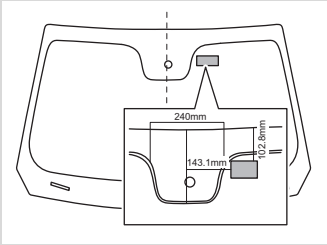
|                         |          |                |                                      |
|-------------------------|----------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| Thickness of brake pad  | Standard | Total 15.82 mm | Thickness of friction material 10 mm |
|                         | Minimum  | Total 7.82 mm  | Thickness of friction material 2 mm  |
| Thickness of brake disc | Standard | 12 mm          |                                      |
|                         | Minimum  | 10 mm          |                                      |

Microwave window

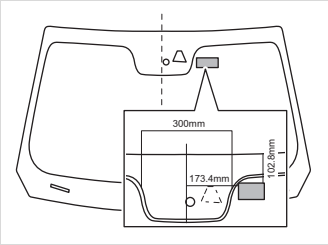
Microwave window

Recommended position (viewed in the cab)

Models without multifunction camera



Models with multifunction camera



## Tires and wheels

|                                        |                                |           |           |           |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Tire specifications                    | 235/60R18                      |           | 255/45R20 |           |
| Wheel dimensions                       | 18×7J                          |           | 20×8.5J   |           |
| Tire pressure kPa (bar)                |                                | 3 persons | ECO       | Full load |
|                                        | Front                          | 230 (2.3) | 270 (2.7) | 260 (2.6) |
|                                        | Rear                           | 230 (2.3) | 270 (2.7) | 260 (2.6) |
| Wheel bolt torque                      | 107.8 - 147 N·m                |           |           |           |
| Requirements for wheel dynamic balance | Residual unbalance: $\leq 8$ g |           |           |           |
| Spare tire specifications              | T145/80R18                     |           |           |           |
| Spare tire pressure kPa (bar)          | 4.2                            |           |           |           |

## Seat (when the seat cushion is deep)

|            |                                                                                           |                            |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Front seat | Longitudinal position (forward from the limit position at the rear end of the slide rail) | 240 mm                     |
|            | Seat back reclining                                                                       | $25^{\circ} \pm 2^{\circ}$ |
| Rear seat  | Longitudinal position                                                                     | Not adjustable             |
|            | Seat back reclining                                                                       | $25^{\circ} \pm 2^{\circ}$ |

Normal use state of the seat back: The seat back in any locking position within the range of adjustable travel is in normal use state.

## 10-4. Specifications

# Fuel information

**Only automobile unleaded gasoline or ethanol gasoline can be used for the car.**

**In order to achieve the best engine performance, be sure to use 95# (or above) automobile unleaded gasoline or ethanol gasoline.**

To ensure the exhaust emission performance and fault diagnosability, it is recommended to use gasoline that complies with the standards specified in each country or region.

### ■ Special fuel filler for automobile gasoline

In order to prevent improper fuel from being added, the fuel filler of the car can only accommodate the special refueling gun of the automobile gasoline pump.

### ■ Engine knocking

- Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- A short and small knocking sound is occasionally heard during acceleration or climbing. This is normal, so don't worry.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions for fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuel. Otherwise the engine may be damaged.
- The use of improper fuel will cause a fault in the engine or exhaust monitoring system.
- If improper fuel is accidentally added, be sure to thoroughly clean the fuel system and check the engine. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

**List of abbreviations .....398**

**Event data recorder .....400**

## List of abbreviations

| Abbreviation | Description                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------|
| ABP          | Automatic Brake Prefill                   |
| ABS          | Antilock Brake System                     |
| ACC          | Adaptive Cruise Control                   |
| ADB          | Adaptive Driving Beam                     |
| AEB          | Autonomous Emergency Braking              |
| APA          | Auto Parking Assist                       |
| AQS          | Air Quality System                        |
| BBF          | Brake Boost Function                      |
| BSD          | Blind Spot Detection                      |
| CDD-S        | Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go |
| CDP          | Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake |
| CO           | Carbon Monoxide                           |
| DSM          | Driver Status Monitoring                  |
| EBD          | Electronic Brakeforce Distribution        |
| ECU          | Electronic Control Unit                   |
| EDR          | Event Data Recorder                       |
| ELR          | Emergency Locking Retractor               |
| EMS          | Engine Management System                  |
| EPB          | Electrical Parking Brake                  |
| EPS          | Electric Power Steering                   |
| ESC          | Electronic Stability Control              |
| ESS          | Emergency Stop Signal                     |

| Abbreviation | Description                     |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| ETC          | Electronic Toll Collection      |
| FCW          | Forward Collision Warning       |
| GPF          | Gasoline Particulate Filter     |
| HBA          | Hydraulic Brake Assist          |
| HBB          | Hydraulic Brake Boost           |
| HHC          | Hill Hold Control               |
| IHC          | Intelligent High Beam Control   |
| LDW          | Lane Departure Warning          |
| LED          | Light Emitting Diode            |
| LKA          | Lane Keeping Assist             |
| MAX          | Maximum                         |
| MIN          | Minimize                        |
| OBD          | On-Board Diagnostic             |
| SACC         | Super Adaptive Cruise Control   |
| TCS          | Traction Control System         |
| TPMS         | Tire Pressure Monitoring System |
| TSR          | Traffic Sign Recognition        |
| USB          | Universal Serial Bus            |
| VIN          | Vehicle Identification Number   |

# Event data recorder

The car is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The EDR is mainly designed to record data in the event of certain or sudden collisions (such as airbag deployment or collision with a barrier), so as to help understand the operation of the vehicle system. The EDR is specially used to record data related to the dynamic control and safety systems of the car within a short period of time. However, the data may not be recorded sometimes, depending on the severity and type of collision.

The data content, source and use recorded by the EDR of the car are shown in the figure below:

| No. | Data name                                                    | Content                                                                                                                 | Source                 |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1   | Longitudinal acceleration                                    | Change in longitudinal vehicle speed                                                                                    | Airbag control unit    |
| 2   | Maximum recorded longitudinal acceleration                   | Maximum cumulative vehicle speed change in the X-axis direction recorded by the EDR                                     | Airbag control unit    |
| 3   | Time to reach the maximum recorded longitudinal acceleration | Time recorded by the EDR from time zero to occurrence of the maximum cumulative vehicle speed change along the X-axis   | Airbag control unit    |
| 4   | Clipping flag                                                | Point in time when the EDR first reaches the sensor range when collecting the acceleration (horizontal or longitudinal) | Airbag control unit    |
| 5   | Vehicle speed                                                | Wheel-side linear velocity or the vehicle speed obtained by other means                                                 | Anti-lock brake system |
| 6   | Service brake, on or off                                     | Used to detect if the driver depresses the brake pedal                                                                  | Engine control unit    |



| No. | Data name                                           | Content                                                                                                                                   | Source              |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 7   | Driver's seat belt status                           | Status of the driver's seat belt buckle switch                                                                                            | Airbag control unit |
| 8   | Accelerator pedal position                          | Percentage of the accelerator pedal actual position to the driver's fully depressed position                                              | Engine control unit |
| 9   | Revolutions per minute (RPM)                        | RPM of the engine main crankshaft                                                                                                         | Engine control unit |
| 10  | Power-on cycle during event                         | Number of power cycles from the first use of the ECU that records the EDR data to the ECU that records the EDR data when the event occurs | Airbag control unit |
| 11  | Power-on cycle during reading                       | Number of power cycles from the first use of the ECU that records the EDR data to the ECU that records the EDR data during reading        | Airbag control unit |
| 12  | Event data record complete status                   | Status flag indicating whether the event data is completely recorded and stored in the ECU that records the EDR data                      | Airbag control unit |
| 13  | Time interval between this event and the last event | Elapsed time from the start of event X to the start of event X-1 if the two events occur within 5 s                                       | Airbag control unit |
| 14  | Vehicle identification number                       | Vehicle identification number (VIN) assigned by the vehicle manufacturer (VIN)                                                            | Airbag control unit |
| 15  | Hardware number of ECU that records EDR data        | ECU that realizes the EDR recording function of the vehicle                                                                               | Airbag control unit |
| 16  | Serial number of ECU that records EDR data          | ECU that realizes the EDR recording function of the vehicle                                                                               | Airbag control unit |
| 17  | Software number of ECU that records EDR data        | ECU that realizes the EDR recording function of the vehicle                                                                               | Airbag control unit |

These data are used for analysis in the event of a deployment event, to better understand the situation of collision and personal injury caused therefrom.

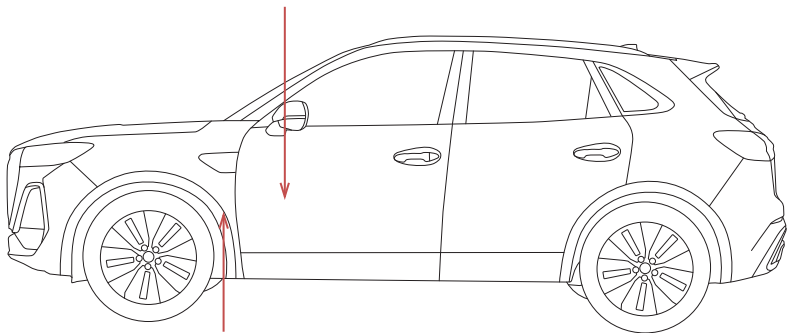
Note: The EDR will record data only when a collision of certain degree occurs to the vehicle; In other words, the EDR will not record data and personal information (e.g. name, gender, age and site of collision) during normal driving. Locked events can override unlocked events rather than locked events. To read the data recorded by the EDR, it is required to use the special equipment specified by the vehicle manufacturer and obtain the permission of access to the EDR. Besides the vehicle manufacturer, the third parties with special equipment (such as law enforcement agencies) can read the information if they have the permission of access to the vehicle or EDR.

For the introduction to ESC/ABS/ACC and other functions, refer to the relevant chapters in this manual.

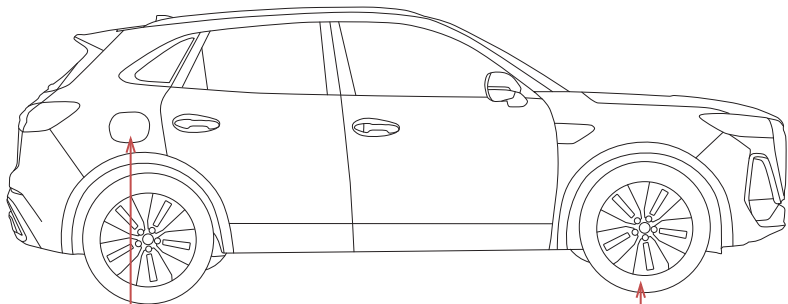
Based on legal obligations of product monitoring, the Company can use the data for environmental monitoring, research and vehicle safety system quality improvement. For the purpose of research, the Company can provide the data to relevant parties in an anonymous form, that is, the data do not involve the information of car, owner or lessee.

References for gas station

Trunk lid unlocking button  
P.87



Engine hood release handle  
P.356



Fuel filler cap  
P.74

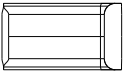
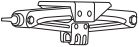


Tire pressure  
P.395



|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Fuel tank capacity (for reference) | See P.390                     |
| Fuel type                          | Unleaded gasoline (See P.390) |
| Tire pressure                      | See P.395                     |
| Oil capacity                       | See P.390                     |
| Oil grade                          | See P.390                     |

### List of accompanying tools

| Illustration                                                                       | Name                     | Quantity |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------|
|   | Warning triangle         | 1        |
|   | Towing eye               | 1        |
|   | Reflective vest assembly | 1        |
|   | Tire wrench              | 1        |
|   | Jack crank               | 1        |
|  | Jack                     | 1        |